Linux From Scratch

Table of Contents

Linux From Scratch....1
Version 3.1....1
Gerard Beekmans....1

Dedication....2

Preface....8

Foreword....9

Who would want to read this book....10

Who would not want to read this book....11

Organization....12
Part I – Introduction....12
Part II – Installation of the LFS system....12
Part III – Appendixes....12

I. Part I – Introduction....13

Chapter 1. Introduction....14

How things are going to be done....15

Conventions used in this book....16

Book version....17
HTTP Mirrors....17
North America....17
Europe....17
Australia....17
FTP Mirrors....17
North America....17
Europe....18
Australia....18

Acknowledgments....19

Changelog....21

Mailing lists and archives....25
lfs-support....25
lfs-dev....25
lfs-announce....25
lfs-security....26
lfs-book....26
alfs-discuss....26

Table of Contents

blfs−dev....26
blfs−book....26
blfs−support....26
Mail archives....26
How to subscribe?....27
How to unsubscribe?....27
Other list modes....27
Digests....27
Vacation....28

News server....29

Contact information....30

Chapter 2. Important information....31

About $LFS....32

How to download the software....33

How to install the software....34

How to ask for help....36
Basic Information....36
Configure problems....36
Compile problems....36

Download the bootscripts....38

Download the LFS Commands....39

II. Part II − Installing the LFS system....40

Chapter 3. Packages that need to be downloaded....41

Introduction....42

Packages that need to be downloaded....43

Chapter 4. Preparing a new partition....44

Introduction....45

Creating a new partition....46

Creating a file system on the new partition....47

Mounting the new partition....48

Table of Contents

Creating directories....49
FHS compliance notes....49

Chapter 5. Preparing the LFS system....51

Introduction....52

Why do we use static linking?....53

Install all software as user root....54

Installing Bash−2.05a....55
Installation of Bash....55
Command explanations....56
Contents....56
Description....56
Dependencies....56

Installing Binutils−2.11.2....57
Installation of Binutils....57
Command explanations....57
Contents....57
Description....57
addr2line....57
as....57
ar....58
c++filt....58
gasp....58
gprof....58
ld....58
nm....58
objcopy....58
objdump....58
ranlib....58
readelf....59
size....59
strings....59
strip....59
Dependencies....59

Installing Bzip2−1.0.1....60
Installation of Bzip2....60
Command explanations....60
Contents....60
Description....60
bunzip2....60
bzcat....60
bzip2....60

Table of Contents

bzip2recover....61
Dependencies....61

Installing Diffutils−2.7....62
Installation of Diffutils....62
Command explanations....62
Contents....62
Description....62
cmp and diff....62
diff3....62
sdiff....63
Dependencies....63

Installing Fileutils−4.1....64
Installation of Fileutils....64
Command explanations....64
Contents....65
Description....65
chgrp....65
chmod....65
chown....65
cp....65
dd....65
df....65
dir, ls and vdir....65
dircolors....66
du....66
install....66
ln....66
mkdir....66
mkfifo....66
mknod....66
mv....66
rm....66
rmdir....66
shred....66
sync....67
touch....67
Dependencies....67

Installing GCC−2.95.3....68
Installation of GCC....68
Command explanations....68
Contents....69
Description....69
Compiler....69
Preprocessor....69
C++ Library....69

Table of Contents

Dependencies....69

Installing Grep−2.4.2....70
Installation of Grep....70
Contents....70
Description....70
egrep....70
fgrep....70
grep....70
Dependencies....70

Installing Gzip−1.2.4a....71
Installation of Gzip....71
Contents....71
Description....71
gunzip, uncompress....71
gzexe....71
gzip....71
zcat....71
zcmp....72
zdiff....72
zforce....72
zgrep....72
zmore....72
znew....72
Dependencies....72

Installing Linux Kernel−2.4.16....73
Installation of the Linux Kernel....73
Command explanations....73
Why we copy the kernel headers and don't symlink them....73
Contents....74
Description....74
Dependencies....74

Installing Make−3.79.1....75
Installation of Make....75
Contents....75
Description....75
Dependencies....75

Installing Mawk−1.3.3....76
Installation of Mawk....76
Command explanations....76
Contents....76
Description....76
mawk....76
Dependencies....76

Table of Contents

Installing Patch−2.5.4....77
Installation of Patch....77
Contents....77
Description....77
Dependencies....77

Installing Sed−3.02....78
Installation of Sed....78
Contents....78
Description....78
Dependencies....78

Installing Sh−utils−2.0....79
Installation of Sh−utils....79
Contents....79
Description....79
basename....79
chroot....79
date....79
dirname....79
echo....80
env....80
expr....80
factor....80
false....80
groups....80
hostid....80
hostname....80
id....80
logname....80
nice....80
nohup....80
pathchk....81
pinky....81
printenv....81
printf....81
pwd....81
seq....81
sleep....81
stty....81
su....81
tee....81
test....81
true....81
tty....82
uname....82
uptime....82
users....82

Table of Contents

who....82
whoami....82
yes....82
Dependencies....82

Installing Tar−1.13....83
Installation of Tar....83
Contents....83
Description....83
rmt....83
tar....83
Dependencies....83

Installing Texinfo−4.0....84
Installation of Texinfo....84
Contents....84
Description....84
info....84
install−info....84
makeinfo....84
texi2dvi....84
texindex....84
Dependencies....84

Installing Textutils−2.0....86
Installation of Textutils....86
Contents....86
Description....86
cat....86
cksum....86
comm....86
csplit....86
cut....86
expand....86
fmt....87
fold....87
head....87
join....87
md5sum....87
nl....87
od....87
paste....87
pr....87
ptx....87
sort....87
split....88
sum....88
tac....88

Table of Contents

tail....88
tr....88
tsort....88
unexpand....88
uniq....88
wc....88
Dependencies....88

Creating passwd and group files....89

Copying old NSS library files....90

Mounting $LFS/proc file system....91

Chapter 6. Installing basic system software....92

Introduction....93

About debugging symbols....94

Creating $LFS/root/.bash_profile....95

Entering the chroot'ed environment....96
Dependencies....96

Installing Glibc−2.2.4....97
Installation of Glibc....97
Command explanations....98
Contents....98
Description....99
Dependencies....99

Creating devices (Makedev−1.4)....100
Creating devices....100
Command explanations....100
Contents....100
Description....100
Dependencies....101

Installing Man−pages−1.43....102
Installation of Man−pages....102
Command explanations....102
Contents....102
Description....102
Dependencies....102

Installing Findutils−4.1....103
Installing Findutils....103

Table of Contents

FHS compliance notes....103
Command explanations....103
Contents....103
Description....103
bigram....103
code....103
find....104
frcode....104
locate....104
updatedb....104
xargs....104
Dependencies....104

Installing Mawk-1.3.3....105
Installation of Mawk....105
Contents....105
Description....105
mawk....105
Dependencies....105

Installing Ncurses-5.2....106
Installation of Ncurses....106
Command explanations....106
Contents....106
Description....107
The libraries....107
clear....107
infocmp....107
tic....107
toe....107
tput....107
tset....107
Dependencies....107

Installing Vim-6.0....108
Installation of Vim....108
FHS compliance notes....108
Command explanations....109
Contents....109
Description....109
ex....109
gview....109
gvim....109
rgview....109
rgvim....109
rview....109
rvim....109
view....110

Table of Contents

vim....110
vimtutor....110
xxd....110
Dependencies....110

Installing GCC−2.95.3....111
Installation of GCC....111
Contents....111
Description....111
Compiler....111
Preprocessor....111
C++ Library....111
Dependencies....112

Installing Bison−1.28....113
Installation of Bison....113
Command explanations....113
Contents....113
Description....113
Dependencies....114

Installing Less−358....115
Installation of Less....115
Contents....115
Description....115
Dependencies....115

Installing Groff−1.17.2....116
Installation of Groff....116
Contents....116
Description....116
addftinfo....116
afmtodit....116
eqn....116
grodvi....116
groff....116
grog....116
grohtml....117
grolj4....117
grops....117
grotty....117
hpftodit....117
indxbib....117
lkbib....117
lookbib....117
neqn....117
nroff....117
pfbtops....118

Table of Contents

pic....118
psbb....118
refer....118
soelim....118
tbl....118
tfmtodit....118
troff....118
Dependencies....118

Installing Man−1.5j....119
Installation of Man....119
Contents....119
Description....119
apropos....119
makewhatis....119
man....119
whatis....119
Dependencies....119

Installing Perl−5.6.1....121
Installation of Perl....121
Contents....121
Description....121
Dependencies....121

Installing M4−1.4....122
Installation of M4....122
Contents....122
Description....122
Dependencies....122

Installing Texinfo−4.0....123
Installation of Texinfo....123
Command explanations....123
Contents....123
Description....123
info....123
install−info....123
makeinfo....123
texi2dvi....123
texindex....124
Dependencies....124

Installing Autoconf−2.52....125
Installation of Autoconf....125
Contents....125
Description....125
autoconf....125

Table of Contents

autoheader....125
autoreconf....125
autoscan....125
autoupdate....126
ifnames....126
Dependencies....126

Installing Automake−1.5....127
Installation of Automake....127
Contents....127
Description....127
aclocal....127
automake....127
Dependencies....127

Installing Bash−2.05a....128
Installation of Bash....128
Contents....128
Description....128
Dependencies....128

Installing Flex−2.5.4a....129
Installation of Flex....129
Contents....129
Description....129
Dependencies....129

Installing File−3.36....130
Installation of File....130
Command explanations....130
Contents....130
Description....130
Dependencies....130

Installing Libtool−1.4.2....131
Installation of Libtool....131
Contents....131
Description....131
libtool....131
libtoolize....131
ltdl library....131
Dependencies....131

Installing Bin86−0.16.0....132
Installation of Bin86....132
Contents....132
Description....132
as86....132

Table of Contents

as86_encap....132
ld86....132
objdump86....132
nm86....132
size86....133
Dependencies....133

Installing Binutils–2.11.2....134
Installation of Binutils....134
Command explanations....134
Contents....134
Description....134
addr2line....134
as....134
ar....134
c++filt....135
gasp....135
gprof....135
ld....135
nm....135
objcopy....135
objdump....135
ranlib....135
readelf....135
size....136
strings....136
strip....136
Dependencies....136

Installing Bzip2–1.0.1....137
Installation of Bzip2....137
Command explanations....137
Contents....137
Description....138
bunzip2....138
bzcat....138
bzip2....138
bzip2recover....138
Dependencies....138

Installing Ed–0.2....139
Installation of Ed....139
Command explanations....139
Contents....139
Description....139
Dependencies....139

Installing Gettext–0.10.40....140

Table of Contents

Installation of Gettext....140
Contents....140
Description....140
gettext....140
gettextize....140
msgcmp....140
msgcomm....140
msgfmt....140
msgmerge....140
msgunfmt....141
xgettext....141
Dependencies....141

Installing Kbd−1.06....142
Installation of Kbd....142
Contents....142
Description....142
chvt....142
deallocvt....142
dumpkeys....142
fgconsole....142
getkeycodes....142
kbd_mode....143
kbdrate....143
loadkeys....143
loadunimap....143
mapscrn....143
psfxtable....143
resizecons....143
screendump....143
setfont....143
setkeycodes....143
setleds....143
setmetamode....144
setvesablank....144
showfont....144
showkey....144
unicode_start....144
unicode_stop....144
Dependencies....144

Installing Diffutils−2.7....145
Installation of Diffutils....145
Contents....145
Description....145
cmp and diff....145
diff3....145
sdiff....145

Table of Contents

Dependencies....145

Installing E2fsprogs−1.25....146
Installation of E2fsprogs....146
Command explanations....146
Contents....146
Description....146
badblocks....146
chattr....146
debugfs....146
dumpe2fs....147
e2fsck and fsck.ext2....147
e2label....147
fsck....147
lsattr....147
mke2fs and mkfs.ext2....147
mklost+found....147
tune2fs....147
uuidgen....147
Dependencies....147

Installing Fileutils−4.1....148
Installation of Fileutils....148
Contents....148
Description....148
chgrp....148
chmod....148
chown....148
cp....148
dd....148
df....148
dir, ls and vdir....149
dircolors....149
du....149
install....149
ln....149
mkdir....149
mkfifo....149
mknod....149
mv....149
rm....149
rmdir....149
shred....150
sync....150
touch....150
Dependencies....150

Installing Grep−2.4.2....151

Table of Contents

Installation of Grep....151
Contents....151
Description....151
egrep....151
fgrep....151
grep....151
Dependencies....151

Installing Gzip−1.2.4a....152
Installation of Gzip....152
Contents....152
Description....152
gunzip, uncompress....152
gzexe....152
gzip....152
zcat....152
zcmp....153
zdiff....153
zforce....153
zgrep....153
zmore....153
znew....153
Dependencies....153

Installing Lilo−22.1....154
Installation of Lilo....154
Contents....154
Description....154
Dependencies....154

Installing Make−3.79.1....155
Installation of Make....155
Contents....155
Description....155
Dependencies....155

Installing Modutils−2.4.12....156
Installation of Modutils....156
Contents....156
Description....156
depmod....156
genksyms....156
insmod....156
insmod_ksymoops_clean....156
kerneld....156
kernelversion....156
ksyms....157
lsmod....157

Table of Contents

modinfo....157
modprobe....157
rmmod....157
Dependencies....157

Installing Netkit−base−0.17....158
Installation of Netkit−base....158
Contents....158
Description....158
inetd....158
ping....158
Dependencies....158

Installing Patch−2.5.4....159
Installation of Patch....159
Contents....159
Description....159
Dependencies....159

Installing Procinfo−18....160
Installation of Procinfo....160
Command explanations....160
Contents....160
Description....160
Dependencies....160

Installing Procps−2.0.7....161
Installation of Procps....161
Command explanations....161
Contents....161
Description....161
free....161
kill....161
oldps and ps....161
skill....161
snice....161
sysctl....162
tload....162
top....162
uptime....162
vmstat....162
w....162
watch....162
Dependencies....162

Installing Psmisc−20.1....163
Installation of Psmisc....163
Command explanations....163

Table of Contents

Contents....163
Description....163
fuser....163
killall....163
pidof....164
pstree....164
Dependencies....164

Installing Reiserfsprogs−3.x.0j....165
Installation of Reiserfsprogs....165
Command explanations....165
Contents....165
Description....165
debugreiserfs....165
mkreiserfs....165
reiserfsck....165
resize_reiserfs....165
unpack....165
Dependencies....166

Installing Sed−3.02....167
Installation of Sed....167
Contents....167
Description....167
Dependencies....167

Installing Sh−utils−2.0....168
Installation of Sh−utils....168
FHS compliance notes....168
Contents....168
Description....168
basename....168
chroot....168
date....168
dirname....169
echo....169
env....169
expr....169
factor....169
false....169
groups....169
hostid....169
hostname....169
id....169
logname....169
nice....169
nohup....170
pathchk....170

Table of Contents

pinky....170
printenv....170
printf....170
pwd....170
seq....170
sleep....170
stty....170
su....170
tee....170
test....170
true....171
tty....171
uname....171
uptime....171
users....171
who....171
whoami....171
yes....171
Dependencies....171

Installing Net−tools−1.60....172
Installation of Net−tools....172
Command explanations....172
Contents....172
Description....172
arp....172
hostname....172
ifconfig....172
netstat....172
plipconfig....173
rarp....173
route....173
slattach....173
Dependencies....173

Installing Shadow−20001016....174
Installation of Shadow Password Suite....174
Command explanations....174
Contents....174
Description....175
chage....175
chfn....175
chpasswd....175
chsh....175
dpasswd....175
expiry....175
faillog....175
gpasswd....175

Table of Contents

groupadd....175
groupdel....175
groupmod....176
grpck....176
grpconv....176
grpunconv....176
lastlog....176
login....176
newgrp....176
passwd....176
sg....176
su....176
logoutd....176
mkpasswd....177
newusers....177
pwck....177
pwconv....177
pwunconv....177
useradd....177
userdel....177
usermod....177
vipw and vigr....177
Dependencies....177

Installing Sysklogd−1.4.1....178
Installation of Sysklogd....178
Contents....178
Description....178
klogd....178
syslogd....178
Dependencies....178

Installing Sysvinit−2.83....179
Installation of Sysvinit....179
Contents....179
Description....179
halt....179
init....179
killall5....179
last....180
lastb....180
mesg....180
pidof....180
poweroff....180
reboot....180
runlevel....180
shutdown....180
sulogin....180

Table of Contents

telinit....180
utmpdump....181
wall....181
Dependencies....181

Installing Tar−1.13....182
Installation of Tar....182
Contents....182
Description....182
rmt....182
tar....182
Dependencies....182

Installing Textutils−2.0....183
Installation of Textutils....183
Contents....183
Description....183
cat....183
cksum....183
comm....183
csplit....183
cut....183
expand....183
fmt....184
fold....184
head....184
join....184
md5sum....184
nl....184
od....184
paste....184
pr....184
ptx....184
sort....184
split....185
sum....185
tac....185
tail....185
tr....185
tsort....185
unexpand....185
uniq....185
wc....185
Dependencies....185

Installing Util−linux−2.11m....186
FHS compliance notes....186
Installation of Util−Linux....186

Table of Contents

Command explanations....186
Contents....186
Description....186
agetty....186
arch....186
blockdev....187
cal....187
cfdisk....187
chkdupexe....187
col....187
colcrt....187
colrm....187
column....187
ctrlaltdel....187
cytune....187
ddate....187
dmesg....187
elvtune....188
fdformat....188
fdisk....188
fsck.minix....188
getopt....188
hexdump....188
hwclock....188
ipcrm....188
ipcs....188
kill....188
logger....188
look....189
losetup....189
mcookie....189
mkfs....189
mkfs.bfs....189
mkfs.minix....189
mkswap....189
more....189
mount....189
namei....189
umount....189
ramsize....189
rdev....190
readprofile....190
rename....190
renice....190
rev....190
rootflags....190
script....190
setfdprm....190

Table of Contents

setsid....190
setterm....190
sfdisk....190
swapdev....190
swapoff....191
swapon....191
tunelp....191
ul....191
vidmode....191
whereis....191
write....191
Dependencies....191

Removing old NSS library files....192

Configuring essential software....193
Configuring Vim....193
Configuring Glibc....193
Configuring Dynamic Loader....194
Configuring Sysklogd....194
Configuring Shadow Password Suite....195
Configuring Sysvinit....195
Creating the /var/run/utmp, /var/log/wtmp and /var/log/btmp files....195
Creating root password....196

Chapter 7. Creating system boot scripts....197

Introduction....198

How does the booting process with these scripts work?....199

Creating directories....201

Creating the rc script....202

Creating the rcS script....206

Creating the functions script....208

Creating the checkfs script....217

Creating the halt script....219

Creating the loadkeys script....220
Creating the /etc/sysconfig/keyboard file....220

Creating the mountfs script....221

Table of Contents

Creating the reboot script....223

Creating the sendsignals script....224

Creating the setclock script....225
Creating the /etc/sysconfig/clock file....225

Creating the sysklogd script....227

Creating the template script....228

Creating the localnet script....229

Creating the /etc/sysconfig/network file....230

Creating the /etc/hosts file....231

Creating the ethnet script....232
Adding default gateway to /etc/sysconfig/network....233
Creating NIC configuration files....234

Setting up symlinks and permissions....235

Chapter 8. Making the LFS system bootable....236

Introduction....237

Creating the /etc/fstab file....238

Installing a kernel....239
Dependencies....239

Making the LFS system bootable....240

Chapter 9. The End....241

The End....242

Get Counted....243

Rebooting the system....244

III. Part III – Appendixes....245

Appendix A. Package descriptions....246

Introduction....247

Table of Contents

Bash **248**
Contents 248
Description 248

Binutils **249**
Contents 249
Description 249
addr2line 249
as 249
ar 249
c++filt 249
gasp 249
gprof 249
ld 249
nm 250
objcopy 250
objdump 250
ranlib 250
readelf 250
size 250
strings 250
strip 250

Bzip2 ..... **251**
Contents 251
Description 251
bunzip2 251
bzcat 251
bzip2 251
bzip2recover 251

Diffutils **252**
Contents 252
Description 252
cmp and diff 252
diff3 252
sdiff 252

Fileutils **253**
Contents 253
Description 253
chgrp 253
chmod 253
chown 253
cp 253
dd 253
df 253
dir, ls and vdir 253

Table of Contents

dircolors....254
du....254
install....254
ln....254
mkdir....254
mkfifo....254
mknod....254
mv....254
rm....254
rmdir....254
shred....254
sync....255
touch....255

GCC....256
Contents....256
Description....256
Compiler....256
Preprocessor....256
C++ Library....256

Grep....257
Contents....257
Description....257
egrep....257
fgrep....257
grep....257

Gzip....258
Contents....258
Description....258
gunzip, uncompress....258
gzexe....258
gzip....258
zcat....258
zcmp....258
zdiff....258
zforce....258
zgrep....258
zmore....259
znew....259

Linux kernel....260
Contents....260
Description....260

Make....261
Contents....261

Table of Contents

Description....261

Mawk....262
Contents....262
Description....262
mawk....262

Patch....263
Contents....263
Description....263

Sed....264
Contents....264
Description....264

Sh−utils....265
Contents....265
Description....265
basename....265
chroot....265
date....265
dirname....265
echo....265
env....265
expr....265
factor....265
false....265
groups....266
hostid....266
hostname....266
id....266
logname....266
nice....266
nohup....266
pathchk....266
pinky....266
printenv....266
printf....266
pwd....266
seq....267
sleep....267
stty....267
su....267
tee....267
test....267
true....267
tty....267
uname....267

Table of Contents

uptime....267
users....267
who....267
whoami....268
yes....268

Tar....269
Contents....269
Description....269
rmt....269
tar....269

Texinfo....270
Contents....270
Description....270
info....270
install-info....270
makeinfo....270
texi2dvi....270
texindex....270

Textutils....271
Contents....271
Description....271
cat....271
cksum....271
comm....271
csplit....271
cut....271
expand....271
fmt....271
fold....271
head....271
join....272
md5sum....272
nl....272
od....272
paste....272
pr....272
ptx....272
sort....272
split....272
sum....272
tac....272
tail....273
tr....273
tsort....273
unexpand....273

Table of Contents

uniq....273
wc....273

Glibc....274
Contents....274
Description....274

MAKEDEV....275
Contents....275
Description....275

Man−pages....276
Contents....276
Description....276

Findutils....277
Contents....277
Description....277
bigram....277
code....277
find....277
frcode....277
locate....277
updatedb....277
xargs....277

Ncurses....278
Contents....278
Description....278
The libraries....278
clear....278
infocmp....278
tic....278
toe....278
tput....278
tset....278

Vim....279
Contents....279
Description....279
ex....279
gview....279
gvim....279
rgview....279
rgvim....279
rview....279
rvim....279
view....279

Table of Contents

vim....279
vimtutor....280
xxd....280

Bison....281
Contents....281
Description....281

Less....282
Contents....282
Description....282

Groff....283
Contents....283
Description....283
addftinfo....283
afmtodit....283
eqn....283
grodvi....283
groff....283
grog....283
grohtml....283
grolj4....283
grops....284
grotty....284
hpftodit....284
indxbib....284
lkbib....284
lookbib....284
neqn....284
nroff....284
pfbtops....284
pic....284
psbb....285
refer....285
soelim....285
tbl....285
tfmtodit....285
troff....285

Man....286
Contents....286
Description....286
apropos....286
makewhatis....286
man....286
whatis....286

Table of Contents

Perl....287
Contents....287
Description....287

M4....288
Contents....288
Description....288

Autoconf....289
Contents....289
Description....289
autoconf....289
autoheader....289
autoreconf....289
autoscan....289
autoupdate....289
ifnames....289

Automake....290
Contents....290
Description....290
aclocal....290
automake....290

Flex....291
Contents....291
Description....291

File....292
Contents....292
Description....292

Libtool....293
Contents....293
Description....293
libtool....293
libtoolize....293
ltdl library....293

Bin86....294
Contents....294
Description....294
as86....294
as86_encap....294
ld86....294
objdump86....294
nm86....294
size86....294

Table of Contents

Ed....295
Contents....295
Description....295

Gettext....296
Contents....296
Description....296
gettext....296
gettextize....296
msgcmp....296
msgcomm....296
msgfmt....296
msgmerge....296
msgunfmt....296
xgettext....296

Kbd....297
Contents....297
Description....297
chvt....297
deallocvt....297
dumpkeys....297
fgconsole....297
getkeycodes....297
kbd_mode....297
kbdrate....297
loadkeys....297
loadunimap....298
mapscrn....298
psfxtable....298
resizecons....298
screendump....298
setfont....298
setkeycodes....298
setleds....298
setmetamode....298
setvesablank....298
showfont....298
showkey....299
unicode_start....299
unicode_stop....299

E2fsprogs....300
Contents....300
Description....300
badblocks....300
chattr....300
debugfs....300

Table of Contents

dumpe2fs....300
e2fsck and fsck.ext2....300
e2label....300
fsck....300
lsattr....300
mke2fs and mkfs.ext2....300
mklost+found....301
tune2fs....301
uuidgen....301

Lilo....302
Contents....302
Description....302

Modutils....303
Contents....303
Description....303
depmod....303
genksyms....303
insmod....303
insmod_ksymoops_clean....303
kerneld....303
kernelversion....303
ksyms....303
lsmod....303
modinfo....303
modprobe....304
rmmod....304

Procinfo....305
Contents....305
Description....305

Procps....306
Contents....306
Description....306
free....306
kill....306
oldps and ps....306
skill....306
snice....306
sysctl....306
tload....306
top....306
uptime....306
vmstat....307
w....307
watch....307

Table of Contents

Psmisc....308
Contents....308
Description....308
fuser....308
killall....308
pidof....308
pstree....308

Reiserfsprogs....309
Contents....309
Description....309
debugreiserfs....309
mkreiserfs....309
reiserfsck....309
resize_reiserfs....309
unpack....309

Shadow Password Suite....310
Contents....310
Description....310
chage....310
chfn....310
chpasswd....310
chsh....310
dpasswd....310
expiry....310
faillog....310
gpasswd....310
groupadd....311
groupdel....311
groupmod....311
grpck....311
grpconv....311
grpunconv....311
lastlog....311
login....311
newgrp....311
passwd....311
sg....311
su....312
logoutd....312
mkpasswd....312
newusers....312
pwck....312
pwconv....312
pwunconv....312
useradd....312
userdel....312

Table of Contents

usermod....312
vipw and vigr....312

Sysklogd....313
Contents....313
Description....313
klogd....313
syslogd....313

Sysvinit....314
Contents....314
Description....314
halt....314
init....314
killall5....314
last....314
lastb....314
mesg....314
pidof....314
poweroff....315
reboot....315
runlevel....315
shutdown....315
sulogin....315
telinit....315
utmpdump....315
wall....315

Util Linux....316
Contents....316
Description....316
agetty....316
arch....316
blockdev....316
cal....316
cfdisk....316
chkdupexe....316
col....316
colcrt....316
colrm....317
column....317
ctrlaltdel....317
cytune....317
ddate....317
dmesg....317
elvtune....317
fdformat....317
fdisk....317

Table of Contents

fsck.minix....317
getopt....317
hexdump....317
hwclock....318
ipcrm....318
ipcs....318
kill....318
logger....318
look....318
losetup....318
mcookie....318
mkfs....318
mkfs.bfs....318
mkfs.minix....318
mkswap....319
more....319
mount....319
namei....319
umount....319
ramsize....319
rdev....319
readprofile....319
rename....319
renice....319
rev....319
rootflags....319
script....320
setfdprm....320
setsid....320
setterm....320
sfdisk....320
swapdev....320
swapoff....320
swapon....320
tunelp....320
ul....320
vidmode....320
whereis....321
write....321

Netkit−base....322
Contents....322
Description....322
inetd....322
ping....322

Net−tools....323
Contents....323

Table of Contents

Description....323
arp....323
hostname....323
ifconfig....323
netstat....323
plipconfig....323
rarp....323
route....323
slattach....323

Appendix B. Dependencies....324

Introduction....325

Bash−2.05....326
Dependencies....326

Binutils−2.11.2....327
Dependencies....327

Bzip2−1.0.1....328
Dependencies....328

Diffutils−2.7....329
Dependencies....329

Fileutils−4.1....330
Dependencies....330

GCC−2.95.3....331
Dependencies....331

Grep−2.4.2....332
Dependencies....332

Gzip−1.2.4a....333
Dependencies....333

Linux−2.4.8....334
Dependencies....334

Make−3.79.1....335
Dependencies....335

Mawk−1.3.3....336
Dependencies....336

Patch−2.5.4....337

Table of Contents

Dependencies....337

Sed-3.02....338
Dependencies....338

Sh-utils-2.0....339
Dependencies....339

Tar-1.13....340
Dependencies....340

Texinfo-4.0....341
Dependencies....341

Textutils-2.0....342
Dependencies....342

Chroot....343
Dependencies....343

Glibc-2.2.4....344
Dependencies....344

Makedev-1.4....345
Dependencies....345

Man-pages-1.39....346
Dependencies....346

Findutils-4.1....347
Dependencies....347

Ncurses-5.2....348
Dependencies....348

Vim-5.8....349
Dependencies....349

Bison-1.28....350
Dependencies....350

Less-358....351
Dependencies....351

Groff-1.17.2....352
Dependencies....352

Man-1.5i2....353

Table of Contents

Dependencies....353

Perl-5.6.1....354
Dependencies....354

M4-1.4....355
Dependencies....355

Autoconf-2.52....356
Dependencies....356

Automake-1.5....357
Dependencies....357

Flex-2.5.4a....358
Dependencies....358

File-3.36....359
Dependencies....359

Libtool-1.4....360
Dependencies....360

Bin86-0.16.0....361
Dependencies....361

Ed-0.2....362
Dependencies....362

Gettext-0.10.39....363
Dependencies....363

Kbd-1.06....364
Dependencies....364

E2fsprogs-1.22....365
Dependencies....365

Lilo-21.7.5....366
Dependencies....366

Modutils-2.4.7....367
Dependencies....367

Netkit-base-0.17....368
Dependencies....368

Procinfo-18....369

Table of Contents

Dependencies....369

Procps−2.0.7....370
Dependencies....370

Psmisc−20.1....371
Dependencies....371

Reiserfs−N/A....372
Dependencies....372

Net−tools−1.60....373
Dependencies....373

Shadow−20001016....374
Dependencies....374

Sysklogd−1.4.1....375
Dependencies....375

Sysvinit−2.82....376
Dependencies....376

Util−linux−2.11h....377
Dependencies....377

Appendix C. Resources....378

Introduction....379

Books....380

HOWTOs and Guides....381

Other....382

Appendix D. Official download locations....383

Official download locations....384

Linux From Scratch

Version 3.1

Gerard Beekmans

Copyright © 1999, 2000, 2001 by Gerard Beekmans

This book describes the process of creating a Linux system from scratch from an already installed Linux distribution, using nothing but the sources of the software that we use.

Copyright (c) 1999−2001, Gerard Beekmans

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions in any form must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Neither the name of "Linux From Scratch" nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this material without specific prior written permission.
- Any material derived from Linux From Scratch must contain a reference to the "Linux From Scratch" project.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Dedication

This book is dedicated to my loving and supportive wife *Beverly Beekmans*.

Table of Contents

Preface
- *Foreword*
- *Who would want to read this book*
- *Who would not want to read this book*
- *Organization*
  - *Part I − Introduction*
  - *Part II − Installation of the LFS system*
  - *Part III − Appendixes*

I. Part I − Introduction
- *1. Introduction*
  - *How things are going to be done*
  - *Conventions used in this book*
  - *Book version*
  - *Acknowledgments*
  - *Changelog*
  - *Mailing lists and archives*
  - *News server*
  - *Contact information*
- *2. Important information*
  - *About $LFS*
  - *How to download the software*
  - *How to install the software*
  - *How to ask for help*
  - *Download the bootscripts*
  - *Download the LFS Commands*

II. Part II − Installing the LFS system
- *3. Packages that need to be downloaded*
  - *Introduction*
  - *Packages that need to be downloaded*
- *4. Preparing a new partition*
  - *Introduction*
  - *Creating a new partition*
  - *Creating a file system on the new partition*
  - *Mounting the new partition*
  - *Creating directories*
- *5. Preparing the LFS system*
  - *Introduction*
  - *Why do we use static linking?*
  - *Install all software as user root*
  - *Installing Bash−2.05a*
  - *Installing Binutils−2.11.2*
  - *Installing Bzip2−1.0.1*
  - *Installing Diffutils−2.7*
  - *Installing Fileutils−4.1*
  - *Installing GCC−2.95.3*

Installing Grep−2.4.2
Installing Gzip−1.2.4a
Installing Linux Kernel−2.4.16
Installing Make−3.79.1
Installing Mawk−1.3.3
Installing Patch−2.5.4
Installing Sed−3.02
Installing Sh−utils−2.0
Installing Tar−1.13
Installing Texinfo−4.0
Installing Textutils−2.0
Creating passwd and group files
Copying old NSS library files
Mounting $LFS/proc file system
6. Installing basic system software
Introduction
About debugging symbols
Creating $LFS/root/.bash_profile
Entering the chroot'ed environment
Installing Glibc−2.2.4
Creating devices (Makedev−1.4)
Installing Man−pages−1.43
Installing Findutils−4.1
Installing Mawk−1.3.3
Installing Ncurses−5.2
Installing Vim−6.0
Installing GCC−2.95.3
Installing Bison−1.28
Installing Less−358
Installing Groff−1.17.2
Installing Man−1.5j
Installing Perl−5.6.1
Installing M4−1.4
Installing Texinfo−4.0
Installing Autoconf−2.52
Installing Automake−1.5
Installing Bash−2.05a
Installing Flex−2.5.4a
Installing File−3.36
Installing Libtool−1.4.2
Installing Bin86−0.16.0
Installing Binutils−2.11.2
Installing Bzip2−1.0.1
Installing Ed−0.2
Installing Gettext−0.10.40
Installing Kbd−1.06
Installing Diffutils−2.7
Installing E2fsprogs−1.25
Installing Fileutils−4.1
Installing Grep−2.4.2
Installing Gzip−1.2.4a

Installing Lilo−22.1
Installing Make−3.79.1
Installing Modutils−2.4.12
Installing Netkit−base−0.17
Installing Patch−2.5.4
Installing Procinfo−18
Installing Procps−2.0.7
Installing Psmisc−20.1
Installing Reiserfsprogs−3.x.0j
Installing Sed−3.02
Installing Sh−utils−2.0
Installing Net−tools−1.60
Installing Shadow−20001016
Installing Sysklogd−1.4.1
Installing Sysvinit−2.83
Installing Tar−1.13
Installing Textutils−2.0
Installing Util−linux−2.11m
Removing old NSS library files
Configuring essential software
7. Creating system boot scripts
Introduction
How does the booting process with these scripts work?
Creating directories
Creating the rc script
Creating the rcS script
Creating the functions script
Creating the checkfs script
Creating the halt script
Creating the loadkeys script
Creating the mountfs script
Creating the reboot script
Creating the sendsignals script
Creating the setclock script
Creating the sysklogd script
Creating the template script
Creating the localnet script
Creating the /etc/sysconfig/network file
Creating the /etc/hosts file
Creating the ethnet script
Setting up symlinks and permissions
8. Making the LFS system bootable
Introduction
Creating the /etc/fstab file
Installing a kernel
Making the LFS system bootable
9. The End
The End
Get Counted
Rebooting the system
III. Part III − Appendixes

A. Package descriptions
- *Introduction*
- *Bash*
- *Binutils*
- *Bzip2*
- *Diffutils*
- *Fileutils*
- *GCC*
- *Grep*
- *Gzip*
- *Linux kernel*
- *Make*
- *Mawk*
- *Patch*
- *Sed*
- *Sh−utils*
- *Tar*
- *Texinfo*
- *Textutils*
- *Glibc*
- *MAKEDEV*
- *Man−pages*
- *Findutils*
- *Ncurses*
- *Vim*
- *Bison*
- *Less*
- *Groff*
- *Man*
- *Perl*
- *M4*
- *Autoconf*
- *Automake*
- *Flex*
- *File*
- *Libtool*
- *Bin86*
- *Ed*
- *Gettext*
- *Kbd*
- *E2fsprogs*
- *Lilo*
- *Modutils*
- *Procinfo*
- *Procps*
- *Psmisc*
- *Reiserfsprogs*
- *Shadow Password Suite*
- *Sysklogd*
- *Sysvinit*
- *Util Linux*

Netkit−base
Net−tools
B. Dependencies
Introduction
Bash−2.05
Binutils−2.11.2
Bzip2−1.0.1
Diffutils−2.7
Fileutils−4.1
GCC−2.95.3
Grep−2.4.2
Gzip−1.2.4a
Linux−2.4.8
Make−3.79.1
Mawk−1.3.3
Patch−2.5.4
Sed−3.02
Sh−utils−2.0
Tar−1.13
Texinfo−4.0
Textutils−2.0
Chroot
Glibc−2.2.4
Makedev−1.4
Man−pages−1.39
Findutils−4.1
Ncurses−5.2
Vim−5.8
Bison−1.28
Less−358
Groff−1.17.2
Man−1.5i2
Perl−5.6.1
M4−1.4
Autoconf−2.52
Automake−1.5
Flex−2.5.4a
File−3.36
Libtool−1.4
Bin86−0.16.0
Ed−0.2
Gettext−0.10.39
Kbd−1.06
E2fsprogs−1.22
Lilo−21.7.5
Modutils−2.4.7
Netkit−base−0.17
Procinfo−18
Procps−2.0.7
Psmisc−20.1
Reiserfs−N/A

Net−tools−1.60
Shadow−20001016
Sysklogd−1.4.1
Sysvinit−2.82
Util−linux−2.11h
C. Resources
Introduction
Books
HOWTOs and Guides
Other
D. Official download locations
Official download locations

Preface

Foreword

Having used a number of different Linux distributions, I was never fully satisfied with any of them. I didn't like the way the bootscripts were arranged, I didn't like the way certain programs were configured by default, and more of those things. I came to realize that if I wanted to be fully satisfied with a Linux system, I would have to build my own system from scratch, ideally using only the source code. Not using pre−compiled packages of any kind. No help from some sort of CD−ROM or bootdisk that would install some basic utilities. I would use my current Linux system and use that one to build my own.

This, at one time, wild idea seemed very difficult and at times almost impossible. After sorting out all kinds of dependency problems, compile problems, etcetera, a custom−built Linux system was created and fully operational. I called this system an LFS system, which stands for Linux From Scratch.

I hope all of you will have a great time working on LFS!

−− Gerard Beekmans gerard@linuxfromscratch.org

Who would want to read this book

There are a lot of reasons why somebody would want to read this book in order to install an LFS system. The question most people raise is "why go through all the hassle of manually installing a Linux system from scratch when you can just download an existing distribution like Debian or Redhat". That is a valid question which I hope to answer for you.

The most important reason for LFS's existence is teaching people how a Linux system works internally. Building an LFS system teaches you about all that makes Linux tick, how things work together, and depend on each other. And most importantly, how to customize it to your own taste and needs.

One of the key benefits of LFS is that you are in control of your system without having to rely on somebody else's Linux implementation like Debian. You are in the driver's seat now and are able to dictate every single thing such as the directory layout and boot script setup. You will also know exactly where, why and how programs are installed.

Another benefit of LFS is that you can create a very compact Linux system. When you install a distribution like Debian or RedHat, you end up installing a lot of programs you would never in your life use. They're just sitting there taking up (precious) disk space. It's not hard to get an LFS system installed under 100 MB. Does that still sound like a lot? A few of us have been working on creating a very small embedded LFS system. We installed a system that was just enough to run the Apache web server; total disk space usage was approximately 8 MB. With further stripping, that can be brought down to 5 MB or less. Try that with a generic Debian or Redhat distribution.

If we were to compare a Linux distribution with a hamburger you buy at a supermarket or fast−food restaurant, you would end up eating it without knowing precisely what it is you are eating, whereas LFS gives you the ingredients to make a hamburger. This allows you to carefully inspect it, remove unwanted ingredients, and at the same time allow you to add ingredients to enhance the flavour of your hamburger. When you are satisfied with the ingredients, you go on to the next part of putting it together. You now have the chance to make it just the way you like it: broil it, bake it, deep−fry it, barbeque it, or eat it raw.

Another analogy that we can use is that of comparing LFS with a finished house. LFS will give you the skeleton of a house, but it's up to you to install plumbing, electrical outlets, kitchen, bathtub, wallpaper, etc.

Another advantage of a custom built Linux system is added security. You will compile the entire system from source, thus allowing you to audit everything, if you wish to do so, and apply all the security patches you want or need to apply. You don't have to wait for somebody else to provide a new binary package that fixes a security hole. Besides, you have no guarantee that the new package actually fixes the problem (adequately). You never truly know whether a security hole is fixed or not unless you do it yourself.

Who would not want to read this book

People who don't want to build an entire Linux system from scratch probably don't want to read this book. If you, however, want to learn more about what happens behind the scenes, in particular what happens between turning on the computer and seeing the command prompt, you may want to read the "From−PowerUp−To−Bash−Prompt−HOWTO". This \ HOWTO builds a bare system, in a way similar to the one this book uses, but it focuses more on just installing a bootable system instead of a complete system.

To decide whether to read this book or the From−PowerUp−To−Bash−Prompt−HOWTO, ask yourself this question: "Is my main objective to get a working Linux system that I'm going to build myself and, along the way learn what every component of a system is for? Or is just the learning part my main objective?" If you want to build and learn, read this book. If you just want to learn the basics, then the From−PowerUp−To−Bash−Prompt−HOWTO is probably better material to read.

The "From−PowerUp−To−Bash−Prompt−HOWTO" is located at
http://www.netspace.net.au/~gok/power2bash/

Organization

This book is divided into the following parts. Although most of the appendices is copied into part II (which enlarges the book somewhat), we believe it's the easiest way to read it like this. It simply saves you from having to click to an Appendix, then back to where you were in part II. That's a real chore especially if you're reading the TXT version of this book.

Part I – Introduction

Part One gives general information about this book (versions, where to get it, changelog, mailing lists, and how to get in touch with us). It also explains a few important aspects you really want and need to read before starting to build an LFS system.

Part II – Installation of the LFS system

Part Two guides you through the installation of the LFS system which will be the foundation for the rest of the system. Whatever you choose to do with your brand new LFS system, it will be built on the foundation that's installed in this part.

Part III – Appendixes

Part Three contains various Appendices.

I. Part I – Introduction

Table of Contents

1. Introduction
2. Important information

Chapter 1. Introduction

How things are going to be done

We are going to build the LFS system by using an already installed Linux distribution such as Debian, SuSe, Slackware, Mandrake, RedHat, etc. There is no need to have any kind of bootdisk. We will use an existing Linux system as the base (since we need a compiler, linker, text editor, and other tools).

After you have downloaded the necessary packages that make up an LFS system you will create a new Linux native partition onto which the LFS system will be installed.

The next step, chapter 5, will be the installation of a number of packages that are statically linked and installed on the LFS partition. These packages form a basic development suite which will be used to install the actual system, and are also needed to resolve circular dependencies. Examples of circular dependencies are: you need a compiler to install a compiler. You need a shell in order to install a shell. And so on.

Chapter 6 installs the actual base system. We use the chroot program to start a new shell whose root directory will be set to the LFS partition. This, in essence, is the same as rebooting and having the kernel mount the LFS partition as the root partition. The reason that we don't actually reboot, but instead chroot, is that this way you can still use your host system. While software is being installed you can simply switch to a different VC (Virtual Console) or X desktop and continue using your computer as you normally would.

When all the software is installed, chapter 7 will setup the boot scripts. Chapter 8 will setup the Linux boot loader and in chapter 9 there are some pointers what you can do after you finish the book. Then you can finally reboot your system into your new LFS system, and start to really use it.

This is the process in a nutshell. Detailed information on the steps you are taking are provided in the chapters as you go through them. If something isn't completely clear yet, don't worry. It will become very clear shortly.

Please read chapter 2 carefully as it explains a few important things you need to be aware of before you work your way through chapters 5 and above.

Conventions used in this book

To make things easy to follow, there are a number of conventions used throughout the book. Following are some examples:

`./configure --prefix=/usr`

This form of text is designed to be typed exactly as seen unless otherwise noted in the surrounding text. It is also used in the explanation sections to identify which of the commands is being referred to.

```
install-info: unknown option  `--dir-file=/mnt/lfs/usr/info/dir'
```

This form of text (fixed width text) is showing screen output, probably as the result of commands issued and is also used to show filenames such as `/etc/lilo.conf`

Emphasis

This form of text is used for several purposes in the book but mainly to emphasize important points or to give examples as to what to type.

http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/

This form of text is used for hyperlinks, both within the book and to external pages such as HowTo's, download locations, websites, etc.

```
cat > $LFS/etc/group << "EOF"
root:x:0:
bin:x:1:
......
EOF
```

This type of section is used mainly when creating configuration files. The first command (in bold) tells the system to create the file $LFS/etc/group from whatever is typed on the following lines until the sequence EOF is encountered. Therefore, this whole section is generally typed as seen.

Book version

This is LFS−BOOK version 3.1 dated December 3rd, 2001. If this version is older than a month a newer version is probably already available for download. Check one of the mirror sites below for updated versions.

Below is a list of our current HTTP and FTP mirror sites as of November 18th, 2001. This list might not be accurate anymore. The latest info can be found on our website at http://www.linuxfromscratch.org.

HTTP Mirrors

North America

- Fremont, California, USA [100 Mbit] − http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/intro.shtml
- Columbus, Ohio, United States [1 Mbit] − http://www.us.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/intro.shtml

Europe

- Braunschweig, Germany [10 Mbit] − http://www.de.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/intro.shtml
- Mainz, Germany [100 Mbit] − http://lfs.linux−provider.net/lfs/intro.shtml
- Vienna Univ. of Technology, Austria [16 Mbit] − http://www.at.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/intro.shtml
- Oslo, Norway [100 Mbit] − http://www.no.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/intro.shtml
- Teeside, United Kingdom [256 Kbit] − http://www.linuxfromscratch.co.uk/lfs/intro.shtml

Australia

- Brisbane, Australia [155 Mbit] − http://www.au.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/intro.shtml

FTP Mirrors

North America

- Fremont, California, USA [FTP] [100 Mbit] − ftp://ftp.linuxfromscratch.org
-

Fremont, California, USA [HTTP] [100 Mbit] – http://ftp.linuxfromscratch.org

Europe

- Mainz, Germany, Europe [HTTP] [100 Mbit] – http://ftp.linux–provider.net/lfs/
- Vienna Univ. of Tech., Austria [FTP] [16 Mbit] – ftp://ftp.at.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/packages
- Vienna Univ. of Tech., Austria [HTTP] [16 Mbit] – http://ftp.at.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/packages
- Oslo, Norway [FTP] [100 Mbit] – ftp://ftp.no.linuxfromscratch.org/mirrors/lfs/

Australia

- Brisbane, Australia [FTP] [155 Mbit] – ftp://ftp.planetmirror.com/pub/lfs/

Acknowledgments

We would like to thank the following people and organizations for their contributions toward the Linux From Scratch project:

- Mark Stone <mstone@linux.com> for donating the linuxfromscratch.org server.
- VA Linux Systems for providing rackspace and bandwidth for the linuxfromscratch.org server.
- Mark Hymers <markh@linuxfromscratch.org> for being more than a great help in editing this book.
- DREAMWVR.COM for their ongoing sponsorship by donating various resources to the LFS and related sub projects.
- Jesse Tie Ten Quee <highos@highos.com> for running the www.ca.linuxfromscratch.org mirror.
- Jan Niemann <jan.niemann@tu.bs.de> for running the www.de.linuxfromscratch.org mirror.
- Torsten Westermann <westermann@linux−provider.net> for running the lfs.linux−provider.net mirror.
- Ian Chilton <ian@ichilton.co.uk> for running the www.us.linuxfromscratch.org and www.linuxfromscratch.co.uk mirrors.
- Dag Stenstad <dag@stenstad.net> for providing the www.no.linuxfromscratch.org mirror, and Ian Chilton <ian@ichilton.co.uk> for running it.
- Antonin Sprinzl <Antonin.Sprinzl@tuwien.ac.at> for running the www.at.linuxfromscratch.org mirror.
- Jason Andrade <jason@dstc.edu.au> for running the www.au.linuxfromscratch.org mirror.
- Ian Cooper <ian@wpi.edu> for running the www.us2.linuxfromscratch.org mirror.
- VA Linux Systems who, on behalf of Linux.com, donated a VA Linux 420 (former StartX SP2) workstation towards this project.
-

Johan Lenglet <johan@linuxfromscratch.org> for leading the French LFS translation project.

- Jesse Tie Ten Quee <highos@highos.com> for donating a Yamaha CDRW 8824E cd writer.
- O'Reilly for donating books on SQL and PHP.
- Robert Briggs for donating the linuxfromscratch.org and linuxfromscratch.com domain names.
- Frank Skettino <bkenoah@oswd.org> at OSWD for coming up the initial design of the LFS website.
- Garrett LeSage <garrett@linux.com> for creating the LFS banner
- Dean Benson <dean@vipersoft.co.uk> for helping out financially with setting up the LFS non−profit organization.
- Countless other people on the various LFS mailinglists who are making this book happen by giving their suggestions, testing the book and submitting bug reports.

Changelog

3.1 – December 3rd, 2001

- Added:
  - reiserfsprogs–3.x.0j
- Updated to:
  - MAKEDEV–1.4
  - bash–2.05a
  - e2fsprogs–1.25
  - gettext–0.10.40
  - libtool–1.4.2
  - lilo–22.1
  - linux–2.4.16
  - man–1.5j
  - man–pages–1.43
  - modutils–2.4.12
  - sysvinit–2.83
  - util–linux–2.11m
  -

vim−6.0

- November 30th, 2001 [markh]: Chapter 6: Updated to man−1.5j. Removed the sed which we had to use with the old version as the new one detects awk properly.
- November 30th, 2001 [markh]: Chapter 5: Added static library explanation originally posted on lfs−apps (when it still existed) by Plasmatic.
- November 26th, 2001 [markh]: Chapter 5+6: Updated to kernel−2.4.16 and modutils−2.4.12.
- November 26th, 2001 [markh]: Chapter 6: Added FHS compliance notes to the findutils installation.
- November 19th, 2001 [markh]: Chapter 5+6: Updated to bash−2.05a, lilo−22.1, MAKEDEV−1.4, man−pages−1.43 and util−linux−2.11m.
- November 5th, 2001 [markh]: Chapter 6: Created new lex script instead of link to flex following comment on lfs−dev. (This is similar to what we do with bison and yacc).
- October 27th, 2001 [markh]: General: Large XML Tidy−up. Shouldn't affect the book text or layout. If it does, something has gone wrong!
- October 27th, 2001 [markh]: Chapter 6: Added reiserfsprogs−3.x.0j and updated to lilo−22.0.2.
- October 24th, 2001 [markh]: General: Fixed a bundle of spelling errors which were reported.
- October 12th, 2001 [markh]: Chapter 5 − Kernel: Added explanation as to why we copy the kernel headers rather than symlink them.
- October 12th, 2001 [markh]: Appendix A − Gzip: Added uncompress to the gunzip description as it was missing.
- October 12th, 2001 [markh]: Chapter 6 − Util−linux: Removed the USRGAMES_DIR=/usr/bin entry as it's no longer needed with util−linux−2.11l.
- October 9th, 2001 [gerard]: Chapter 6 − Kbd: Removed the −−datadir option, kbd's default is set properly already.
-

October 7th, 2001 [gerard]: Chapter 6 – Shadow: Mentioned the http://hints.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/shadowpasswd_plus.txt lfs–hint

- October 7th, 2001 [gerard]: Chapter 6 – Vim: Changed the installation instructions to fix a bug in vim–6.0's `syntax/sh.vim` file, and added the CPPFLAGS variable to specify the global vimrc file as `/etc/vimrc`

- October 7th, 2001 [gerard]: Chapter 6: Updated to libtool–1.4.2, lilo–22.0, man–pages–1.40, modutils–2.4.10, sysvinit–2.83, util–linux–2.11l and vim–6.0

- October 2nd, 2001 [gerard]: Chapter 9 – The End: Added the reference to the LFS Counter at http://linuxfromscratch.org/cgi–bin/lfscounter.cgi

- September 26th, 2001 [gerard]: Chapter 1 – News server: Added reference to the news server

- September 26th, 2001 [markh]: Chapter 6 – E2fsprogs: Changed ––with–root–prefix=/ to ––with–root–prefix="" in e2fsprogs install instructions. The reason for the change is that a value of / will cause symlinks and installation paths to use things like //lib instead of just /lib. This isn't bad perse, it just doesn't look nice.

- September 26th, 2001 [markh]: Chapter 5+6: Updated to e2fsprogs–1.25, gettext–0.10.40, linux–2.4.10, modutils–2.4.9 and util–linux–2.11i.

- September 22nd, 2001 [markh]: Appendix A: Re–ordered the descriptions into alphabetical order.

3.0 – September 21st, 2001

- Updated to:

  - e2fsprogs–1.24

- September 21st, 2001 [markh]: Chapter 1+7: Changed the mailing list information to reflect the new ml structure. The Ch7 change is that the rc and rcS scripts now ask people to report problems to lfs–dev instead of lfs–discuss.

- September 18th, 2001 [gerard]: Chapter 5+6 – GCC: Added ––enable–threads=posix to chapter 5, and changed ––enable–threads to ––enable–threads=posix in chapter 6. Although the default is posix threads when not specified, it's clearer this way what's being enabled.

-

September 17th, 2001 [gerard]: Chapter 6 – Psmisc: Added notes how to deal with psmisc's pidof symlink (in case sysvinit isn't installed) and man page. Also, added −−exec−prefix=/ to psmisc's configure script in order for the programs to be installed in /bin rather than /usr/bin (bootscripts may use them, so they must be in /bin).

- September 16th, 2001 [markh]: Chapter 6 – Util−linux: Added USRGAMES_DIR=/usr/bin to the make install routine so that /usr/games isn't created for banner and it is installed in /usr/bin.

- September 14th, 2001 [markh]: Chapter 6 – E2fsprogs: Updated to version 1.24.

- September 11th, 2001 [gerard]: Chapter 6 – Man: Added missing && to 'done' and chmod the configure script to mode 755 instead of 700 (more of a default mode so people don't _have_ to be running as the owner of that file).

Mailing lists and archives

The linuxfromscratch.org server is hosting the following publicly accessible mailing lists:

- lfs−support
- lfs−dev
- lfs−announce
- lfs−security
- lfs−book
- alfs−discuss
- blfs−dev
- blfs−book
- blfs−support

lfs−support

The lfs−support mailing list provides support to users building an LFS system as far as the end of the main book. Requests for help with installing software beyond the base system should go to the blfs−support list.

lfs−dev

The lfs−dev mailing list discusses matters strictly related to the LFS−BOOK. If problems with the book come up, a bug or two need to be reported, or suggestions to improve the book should be made, this mailing list is the right one.

Requests for help should go to lfs−support or blfs−support.

lfs−announce

The lfs−announce list is a moderated list. It can be subscribed to, but you can't post any messages to this list. This list is used to announce new stable releases. The lfs−dev list will carry information about development

releases as well. If a user is already on the lfs−dev list, there's little use subscribing to this list as well because everything that is posted to the lfs−announce list will be posted to the lfs−dev list as well.

lfs−security

The lfs−security mailing list discusses security−related matters. Security concerns or security problems with a package used by LFS, should be addressed on this list.

lfs−book

The lfs−book list is used by the LFS−BOOK editors to co−ordinate lfs−book's maintenance, like XML issues and the like. Actual discussion on what should be added and removed take place on lfs−dev.

alfs−discuss

The alfs−discuss list discusses the development of ALFS, which stands for Automated Linux From Scratch. The goal of this project is to develop an installation tool that can install an LFS system automatically. Its main goal is to speed up compilation by taking away the need to manually enter the commands to configure, compile, and install packages.

blfs−dev

The blfs−dev mailing list discusses matters related to the BLFS−BOOK (Beyond LFS). If problems with the book come up, a bug or two need to be reported, or suggestions to improve the book (such as suggestions as to installation instructions to add) are to be made, this mailing list is the right one.

Requests for help with programs beyond the base LFS setup (not just those in BLFS) should go to blfs−support.

blfs−book

The blfs−book list is used by the BLFS−BOOK editors to co−ordinate blfs−book's maintenance, like XML issues and the like. Actual discussion on what should be added and removed should take place on blfs−dev.

blfs−support

The blfs−support list deals with support requests for any software not installed in the LFS book. The list is not just for help with software explicitly mentioned in the BLFS book, any software beyond that installed as part of the base LFS system can be discussed here.

Mail archives

All these lists are archived and can be viewed online at http://archive.linuxfromscratch.org/mail−archives or downloaded from ftp://ftp.linuxfromscratch.org/mail−archives or ftp://ftp.linuxfromscratch.org/mail−archives.

How to subscribe?

Any of the above−mentioned mailinglists can be subscribed to by sending an email to listar@linuxfromscratch.org and writing *subscribe listname* as the subject header of the message.

Multiple lists at the same time can be subscribed to by using one email. This is done by leaving the subject blank and putting all the commands in the body of the email. The email will look like:

To: listar@linuxfromscratch.org Subject: subscribe lfs−dev subscribe blfs−support subscribe alfs−discuss

After the email is sent, the Listar program will reply with an email requesting a confirmation of the subscription request. After this confirmation email is sent back, Listar will send an email again with the message that the user has been subscribed to the list(s) along with an introduction message for that particular list.

How to unsubscribe?

To unsubscribe from a list, send an email to listar@linuxfromscratch.org and write *unsubscribe listname* as the subject header of the message.

Multiple lists can be unsubscribed at the same time using one email. This is done by leaving the subject header blank and putting all the commands in the body of the email. The email will look like:

To: listar@linuxfromscratch.org Subject: unsubscribe lfs−dev unsubscribe blfs−support unsubscribe alfs−discuss

After the email is sent, the Listar program will reply with an email requesting a confirmation of the unsubscription request. After this confirmation email is sent back, Listar will send an email again with the message that the user has been unsubscribed from the list(s).

Other list modes

The modes that can be set by a user require sending an email to listar@linuxfromscratch.org. The modes themselves are set by writing the appropriate commands in the subject header of the message.

As the name implies, the *Set command* tells what to write to set a mode. The *Unset command* tells what to write to unset a mode.

The listname in the example subject headers should be replaced with the listname to which the mode is going to be applied to. If more than one mode is to be set (to the same list or multiple lists) with one email, this can be done by leaving the subject header blank and writing all the commands in the body of the message instead.

Digests

Set command: *set listname digest* Unset command: *unset listname digest*

All lists have the digest mode available which can be set after a user has subscribed to a list. Being in digest mode will cause you to stop receiving individual messages as they are posted to the list and instead receive

one email a day containing all the messages posted to the list during that day.

There is a second digest mode called digest2. When a user is set to this mode he will receive the daily digests but will also continue to receive the individual messages to the lists as they are posted. To set this mode, substitute *digest* for *digest2* in the command.

Vacation

Set command: *set listname vacation* Unset command: *unset listname vacation*

If a user is going to be away for a while or wishes to stop receiving messages from the lists but doesn't want to unsubscribe, he can change to vacation mode. This has the same effect as unsubscribing, but without having to go through the unsubscribe process and then later through the subscribe process again.

News server

All the mailing lists hosted at linuxfromscratch.org are also accessible via the NNTP server. All messages posted to a mailing list will be copied to the correspondent newsgroup, and vice versa.

The news server can be reached at *news.linuxfromscratch.org*

Contact information

Please direct your emails to one of the LFS mailing lists. See Chapter 1 – Mailing lists and archives for more information on the available mailing lists.

If you need to reach Gerard Beekmans personally, send an email to gerard@linuxfromscratch.org

Chapter 2. Important information

About $LFS

Please read the following carefully: throughout this book the variable $LFS will be used frequently. $LFS must at all times be replaced with the directory where the partition that contains the LFS system is mounted. How to create and where to mount the partition will be explained in full detail in chapter 4. For example, let's assume that the LFS partition is mounted on /mnt/lfs.

For example when you are told to run a command like **`./configure --prefix=$LFS`** you actually have to execute **`./configure --prefix=/mnt/lfs`**

It's important that this is done no matter where it is read; be it in commands entered in a shell, or in a file edited or created.

A possible solution is to set the environment variable LFS. This way $LFS can be entered literally instead of replacing it with /mnt/lfs. This is accomplished by running **`export LFS=/mnt/lfs`**.

Now, if you are told to run a command like **`./configure --prefix=$LFS`** you can type that literally. Your shell will replace $LFS with /mnt/lfs when it processes the command line (meaning when you hit enter after having typed the command).

If you plan to use $LFS, do not forget to set the $LFS variable at all times. If the variable is not set and is used in a command, $LFS will be ignored and whatever is left will be executed. A command like **`echo "root:x:0:0:root:/root:/bin/bash" > $LFS/etc/passwd`** without the $LFS variable set will re–create your host system's /etc/passwd file. Simply put: it will destroy your current password database file.

One way to make sure that $LFS is set at all times is adding it to the /root/.bash_profile and/or /root/.bashrc file(s) so that every time you login as user root, or you 'su' to user root, the $LFS variable is set.

How to download the software

Throughout this document, we will assume that all the packages that were downloaded are placed somewhere in $LFS/usr/src.

A convention you could use is having a $LFS/usr/src/sources directory. Under sources, you can create the directory 0–9 and the directories a through z. A package like sysvinit–2.83.tar.bz2 is stored under $LFS/usr/src/sources/s/. A package like bash–2.05a.tar.bz2 is stored under $LFS/usr/src/sources/b/, and so forth.

The next chapter contains the list of all the packages that need to be downloaded, but the partition that is going to contain our LFS system isn't created yet. Therefore, you should store the files somewhere else and later on move them to $LFS/usr/src/ when the chapter in which the new partition is prepared has been finished.

How to install the software

Before you start using the LFS book, we should point out that all of the commands here assume that you are using the bash shell. If you aren't, the commands may work but we can't guarantee it. If you want a simple life, use bash.

Before you can actually start doing something with a package, you need to unpack it first. Often the package files are tar'ed and gzip'ed or bzip2'ed. We're not going to write down every time how to unpack an archive. We'll explain how to do that once, in this section.

To start with, change to the $LFS/usr/src directory by running:

```
cd $LFS/usr/src
```

If a file is tar'ed and gzip'ed, it is unpacked by running either one of the following two commands, depending on the filename:

```
tar xvzf filename.tar.gz
tar xvzf filename.tgz
```

If a file is tar'ed and bzip2'ed, it is unpacked by running:

```
bzcat filename.tar.bz2 | tar xv
```

Some tar programs (most of them nowadays but not all of them) are slightly modified to be able to use bzip2 files directly using either the I, the y or the j tar parameter, which works the same as the z tar parameter to handle gzip archives. The above construction works no matter how your host system decided to patch bzip2.

If a file is just tar'ed, it is unpacked by running:

```
tar xvf filename.tar
```

When an archive is unpacked, a new directory will be created under the current directory (and this book assumes that the archives are unpacked under the $LFS/usr/src directory). Please enter that new directory before continuing with the installation instructions. Again, every time this book is going to install a package, it's up to you to unpack the source archive and cd into the newly created directory.

From time to time you will be dealing with single files such as patch files. These files are generally gzip'ed or bzip2'ed. Before such files can be used they need to be uncompressed first.

If a file is gzip'ed, it is unpacked by running:

```
gunzip filename.gz
```

If a file is bzip2'ed, it is unpacked by running:

```
bunzip2 filename.bz2
```

After a package has been installed, two things can be done with it: either the directory that contains the sources can be deleted, or it can be kept. We highly recommend deleting it. If you don't do this and try to re–use the same source later on in the book (for example re–using the source trees from chapter 5 for use in

chapter 6), it may not work as you expect it to. Source trees from chapter 5 will have your host distribution's settings, which don't always apply to the LFS system after you enter the chroot'ed environment. Even running something like *make clean* doesn't always guarantee a clean source tree.

So, save yourself a lot of hassle and just remove the source directory immediately after you have installed it.

There is one exception; the kernel source tree. Keep it around as you will need it later in this book when building a kernel. Nothing will use the kernel tree so the source tree won't be in your way.

How to ask for help

If you have a problem while using this book, you'll find that most of the people on Internet Relay Chat (IRC) and the mailing lists will be willing to help you. You can find a list of the LFS mailing lists in Chapter 1 – Mailing lists and archives. To assist us in helping though, you should make sure that you have as much relevant information as you can available. This will assist in diagnosing and solving your problem. This part of the book will guide you as to which sort of information will be useful.

Basic Information

First of all we need a brief explanation of the problem. Essential things to include are:

- The version of the book you are using, which is 3.1
- Which package or section you are having problems with
- What the exact error message or symptom you are receiving is
- If you have deviated from the book at all

Note that saying that you've deviated from the book doesn't mean that we won't help you, after all, LFS is all about choice. It'll just help us to see the possible other causes of your problem.

Configure problems

When something goes wrong during the stage where the configure script is run, look at the last lines of the `config.log`. This file contains possible errors encountered during configure which aren't always printed to the screen. Include those relevant lines if you decide to ask for help.

Compile problems

To help us find the cause of the problem, both screen output and the contents of various files are useful. The screen output from both the ./configure script and when make is run can be useful. Don't blindly include the whole thing but on the other hand, don't include too little. As an example, here is some screen output from make:

```
gcc -DALIASPATH=\"/mnt/lfs/usr/share/locale:.\"
-DLOCALEDIR=\"/mnt/lfs/usr/share/locale\" -DLIBDIR=\"/mnt/lfs/usr/lib\"
-DINCLUDEDIR=\"/mnt/lfs/usr/include\" -DHAVE_CONFIG_H -I. -I.
-g -O2 -c getopt1.c
gcc  -g -O2 -static -o make  ar.o arscan.o commands.o dir.o expand.o file.o
function.o getopt.o implicit.o job.o main.o misc.o read.o remake.o rule.o
signame.o variable.o vpath.o default.o remote-stub.o version.o opt1.o
-lutil job.o: In function `load_too_high':
/lfs/tmp/make-3.79.1/job.c:1565: undefined reference to `getloadavg'
collect2: ld returned 1 exit status
```

```
make[2]: *** [make] Error 1
make[2]: Leaving directory `/lfs/tmp/make-3.79.1'
make[1]: *** [all-recursive] Error 1
make[1]: Leaving directory `/lfs/tmp/make-3.79.1'
make: *** [all-recursive-am] Error 2
```

In this case, many people just include the bottom section where it says

```
make [2]: *** [make] Error 1
```

and onwards. This isn't enough for us to diagnose the problem because it only tells us that *something* went wrong, not *what* went wrong. The whole section as quoted above is what should be included to be helpful, because it includes the command that was executed and the command's error message(s).

Download the bootscripts

Typing out all the bootscripts in chapter 7 can be a long, tedious process, not to mention very error−prone.

To save some time, the bootscripts can be downloaded from http://ftp.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs−bootscripts/lfs−bootscripts−3.1.tar.bz2 or ftp://ftp.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs−bootscripts/lfs−bootscripts−3.1.tar.bz2 .

Download the LFS Commands

LFS Commands is a tarball containing files which list the installation commands for the packages installed in this book.

These files can be used to quickly find out which commands have been changed between the different LFS versions. Download the lfs−commands tarball for this book version and the previous book version and run a diff on the files. That way it is possible to see which packages have updated installation instructions, so any scripts you may have can be modified, or you can reinstall a package if you think that necessary.

A side effect is that these files can be used to dump to a shell and install the packages, though some files need to be modified (where certain settings can't be guessed and depend on user preference or system hardware). Keep in mind, please, that these files are not thoroughly checked for correctness. There may be bugs in the files (since they are manually created at the moment) so do check them and don't blindly trust them.

If you decide to use the commands to automatically install a package and it doesn't work, try reading the book's instructions instead before you ask for help on the mailinglist.

The lfscommands can be downloaded from http://ftp.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs−commands/ or ftp://ftp.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs−commands/ .

II. Part II – Installing the LFS system

Table of Contents

3. Packages that need to be downloaded
4. Preparing a new partition
5. Preparing the LFS system
6. Installing basic system software
7. Creating system boot scripts
8. Making the LFS system bootable
9. The End

Chapter 3. Packages that need to be downloaded

Introduction

Below is a list of all the packages that are needed to download for building the basic system. The version numbers printed correspond to versions of the software that is known to work and which this book is based on. If you experience problems which you can't solve yourself, then please download the version that is assumed in this book (in case you downloaded a newer version).

All the URL's below are to the ftp.linuxfromscratch.org server. We have a couple of FTP mirrors available from which you can download the files a well. The addresses of the mirror sites can be found in Chapter 1 – Book Version.

We have provided a list of official download sites of the packages below in Appendix D – Official download locations. The LFS FTP archive only contains the versions of packages that are recommended for use in this book. You can check the official sites in Appendix C to determine whether a newer package is available. If you do download a newer package, we would appreciate hearing whether you were able to install the package using this book's instructions or not.

Please note that all files downloaded from the LFS FTP archive are files compressed with bzip2 instead of gz. If you don't know how to handle bz2 files, check out Chapter 2 – How to install the software.

Packages that need to be downloaded

Browse FTP: ftp://ftp.linuxfromscratch.org/ Browse HTTP: http://ftp.linuxfromscratch.org/ You can either download one

Chapter 4. Preparing a new partition

Introduction

In this chapter, the partition that is going to host the LFS system is going to be prepared. We will be creating the partition itself, a file system and the directory structure. When this is done, we can move on to the next chapter and start the actual building process.

Creating a new partition

First, let's start with telling you that it is possible to build LFS on only one partition, which is where your original distribution is installed. This is not recommended if it is the first time you try LFS, but may be useful if you are short on disk space. If you feel brave, take a look at the one partition hint at http://hints.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/one−partition−hint.txt Keep in mind, this is a real hint in that sense of the word, not a finished document yet.

Before we can build our new Linux system, we need to have an empty Linux partition on which we can build our new system. I recommend a partition size of at least 750 MB. This gives enough space to store all the tarballs and to compile all packages without worrying about running out of the necessary temporary disk space. But you probably want more space than that if you plan to use the LFS system as your primary Linux system. If that's the case you'd want more space so you can install additional software. If a Linux Native partition is already available, this subsection can be skipped.

The cfdisk program (or another fdisk like program you prefer) is to be started with the appropriate hard disk as the option (like /dev/hda if a new partition is to be created on the primary master IDE disk). It is used to create a Linux Native partition, write the partition table and exit the cfdisk program. Please refer to the documentation that comes with your fdisk program of choice (the man pages are often a good place to start) and read the procedures about how to create a new Linux native partition and how to write the partition table.

The new partition's designation should be remembered. It could be something like hda11. This newly created partition will be referred to as the LFS partition in this book.

Creating a file system on the new partition

Once the partition is created, we have to create a new file system on that partition. The standard file system used these days is the ext2 file system, but the so−called journaling file systems are becoming increasingly popular too. It's of course up to you to decide which file system you want to create, but because we have to assume and work with something, we will assume you chose the ext2 file system.

To create an ext2 file system, use the mke2fs command. The LFS partition is used as the only option to the command and the file system is created.

```
mke2fs /dev/xxx
```

Replace "xxx" by the partition's designation (like hda11).

Mounting the new partition

Now that we have created a file system, it is ready for use. All we have to do to be able to access the partition (as in reading data from and writing data to) is mount it. If it is mounted under /mnt/lfs, this partition can be accessed by cd'ing to the /mnt/lfs directory. This book will assume that the partition was mounted under /mnt/lfs. It doesn't matter which directory is chosen, just make sure you remember what you chose.

Create the /mnt/lfs directory by running:

```
mkdir -p /mnt/lfs
```

Now mount the LFS partition by running:

```
mount /dev/xxx /mnt/lfs
```

Replace "xxx" by the partition's designation (like hda11).

This directory (/mnt/lfs) is the $LFS variable you have read about back in chapter 2. If you were planning to make use of the $LFS environment variable, **`export LFS=/mnt/lfs`** has to be executed now.

Creating directories

Before we start creating directories, we need to check the base system's umask setting. To do this, we run **umask**. The result should be 022. If it isn't, then run the following command to ensure that the directories will be created with the correct permissions:

```
umask 022
```

We would advise you to make sure that the umask is set to 022 throughout your LFS installation.

Let's now create the directory tree on the LFS partition based on the FHS standard, which can be found at http://www.pathname.com/fhs/. Issuing the following commands will create a default directory layout:

```
cd $LFS &&
mkdir -p bin boot dev/pts etc/opt home lib mnt proc root sbin tmp var opt &&
for dirname in $LFS/usr $LFS/usr/local
   do
   mkdir $dirname
   cd $dirname
   mkdir bin etc include lib sbin share src var
   ln -s share/man man
   ln -s share/doc doc
   ln -s share/info info
   cd $dirname/share
   mkdir dict doc info locale man nls misc terminfo zoneinfo
   cd $dirname/share/man
   mkdir man{1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8}
done
cd $LFS/var &&
mkdir -p lock log mail run spool tmp opt cache lib/misc local &&
cd $LFS/opt &&
mkdir bin doc include info lib man &&
cd $LFS/usr &&
ln -s ../var/tmp tmp
```

Normally, directories are created with permission mode 755, which isn't desired for all directories. The first change is a mode 0750 for the $LFS/root directory. This is to make sure that not just everybody can enter the /root directory (the same a user would do with /home/username directories). The second change is a mode 1777 for the tmp directories. This way, any user can write data to the /tmp or /var/tmp directory but cannot remove another user's files (the latter is caused by the so-called "sticky bit" – bit 1 of the 1777 bit mask).

```
cd $LFS &&
chmod 0750 root &&
chmod 1777 tmp var/tmp
```

Now that the directories are created, copy the source files that were downloaded in chapter 3 to some subdirectory under $LFS/usr/src (you will need to create the desired directory yourself).

FHS compliance notes

The FHS stipulates that the /usr/local directory should contain the bin, games,include, lib, man, sbin, and share subdirectories. You can alter your /usr/local directory yourself if you want your system to be FHS-compliant.

Also, the standard says that there should exist a /usr/share/games directory, which we don't much like for a base system. But feel free to make your system FHS−compliant if you wish. The FHS isn't precise as to the structure of the /usr/local/share subdirectories, so we took the liberty of creating the directories that we felt needed.

Chapter 5. Preparing the LFS system

Introduction

In the following chapters we will install all the software that belongs to a basic Linux system. After you're done with this and the next chapter, you'll have a fully working Linux system. The remaining chapters deal with creating the boot scripts, making the LFS system bootable and setting up basic networking.

The software in this chapter will be linked statically and will be reinstalled in the next chapter and linked dynamically. The reason for the static version first is that there is a chance that our normal Linux system and the LFS system aren't using the same C Library versions. If the programs in the first part are linked against an older C library version, those programs might not work well on the LFS system. Another reason is to resolve circular dependencies. An example of such a dependency is that you need a compiler to install a compiler, and you're going to need a shell to install a shell and that compiler.

The key to learning what makes Linux tick is to know exactly what packages are used for and why a user or the system needs them. Descriptions of the package content are provided after the Installation subsection of each package and in Appendix A as well.

During the installation of various packages, you will more than likely see all kinds of compiler warnings scrolling by on the screen. These are normal and can be safely ignored. They are just that, warnings (mostly about improper use of the C or C++ syntax, but not illegal use. It's just that, often, C standards changed and packages still use the old standard which is not a problem).

Before we start, make sure the LFS environment variable is setup properly if you decided to make use of it. Run the following:

```
echo $LFS
```

Check to make sure the output contains the correct directory to the LFS partition's mount point (/mnt/lfs for example).

Why do we use static linking?

Thanks to Plasmatic for posting the text on which this is mainly based to one of the LFS mailing lists.

When making (compiling) a program, rather than having to rewrite all the functions for dealing with the kernel, hardware, files, etc. everytime you write a new program, all these basic functions are instead kept in libraries. glibc, which you install later, is one of these major libraries, which contain code for all the basic functions programs use, like opening files, printing information on the screen, and getting feedback from the user. When the program is compiled, these libraries of code are linked together with the new program, so that it can use any of the functions that the library has.

However, these libraries can be very large (for example, libc.a from can often be around 2.5MB), so you may not want a seperate copy of each library attached to the program. Just imagine if you had a simple command like ls with an extra 2.5MB attached to it! Instead of making the library an actual part of the program, or Statically Linked, the library is kept a seperate file, which is loaded only when the program needs it. This is what we call Dynamically Linked, as the library is loaded and unloaded dynamically, as the program needs it.

So now we have a 1kb file and a 2.5MB file, but we still haven't saved any space (except maybe RAM until the library is needed). The REAL advantage to dynamically linked libraries is that we only need one copy of the library. If `ls` and `rm`both use the same library, then we don't need two copies of the library, as they can both get the code from the same file. Even when in memory, both programs share the same code, rather than loading duplicates into memory. So not only are we saving hard disk space, but also precious RAM.

If dynamic linking saves so much room, then why are we making everything statically linked? Well, that's because when you chroot into your brand new (but very incomplete) LFS environment, these dynamic libraries won't be available because they are somewhere else in your old directory tree (`/usr/lib` for example) which won't be accessible from within your LFS root (`$LFS`).

So in order for your new programs to run inside the chroot environment you need to make sure that the libraries are statically linked when you build them, hence the **`--enable-static-link`**, **`--disable-shared`**, and **`-static`** flags used through Chapter 5. Once in Chapter 6, the first thing we do is build the main set of system libraries, glibc. Once this is made we start rebuilding all the programs we just did in Chapter 5, but this time dynamically linked, so that we can take advantage of the space saving opportunites.

And there you have it, that's why you need to use those weird **`-static`** flags. If you try building everything without them, you'll see very quickly what happens when you chroot into your newly crippled LFS system.

If you want to know more about Dynamically Linked Libraries, consult a book or website on programming, especially a Linux–related site.

Install all software as user root

It's best to log in as root or su's to root when installing the packages. That way you are assured that all files are owned by user and group root (and not owned by the userid of the non−root user), and if a package wants to set special permissions, it can do so without problems due to non−root access.

The documentation that comes with Glibc, Gcc, and other packages recommend not to compile the packages as user root. We feel it's safe to ignore that recommendation and compile as user root anyway. Hundreds of people using LFS have done so without any problems whatsoever, and we haven't encountered any bugs in the compile processes that cause harm. So it's pretty safe (never can be 100% safe though, so it's up to you what you end up doing).

Installing Bash–2.05a

```
Estimated build time:           3 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  20 MB
```

Installation of Bash

Before you attempt to install Bash, you have to check to make sure your distribution has the `/usr/lib/libcurses.a` and `/usr/lib/libncurses.a` files. If your host distribution is an LFS system, all files will be present if you followed the instructions of the book version you read exactly.

If both of the files are missing, you have to install the ncurses development package. This package is often called something like *ncurses–dev*. If this package is already installed, or you just installed it, check for the two files again. Often the `libcurses.a` file is (still) missing. If so, then create `libcurses.a` as a symlink by running the following commands:

```
cd /usr/lib &&
ln -s libncurses.a libcurses.a
```

Now we can continue. Install Bash by running the following commands:

```
./configure --enable-static-link --prefix=$LFS/usr \
   --bindir=$LFS/bin --with-curses &&
make &&
make install &&
cd $LFS/bin &&
ln -sf bash sh
```

If the make install phase ends with something along the lines of

```
install-info: unknown option `--dir-file=/mnt/lfs/usr/info/dir'
usage: install-info [--version] [--help] [--debug] [--maxwidth=nnn]
        [--section regexp title] [--infodir=xxx] [--align=nnn]
        [--calign=nnn] [--quiet] [--menuentry=xxx]
        [--info-dir=xxx]
        [--keep-old] [--description=xxx] [--test]
        [--remove] [--] filename
make[1]: *** [install] Error 1
make[1]: Leaving directory `/mnt/lfs/usr/src/bash-2.05a/doc'
make: [install] Error 2 (ignored)
```

then that means that you are probably using Debian, and that you have an old version of the texinfo package. This error is not severe by any means: the info pages will be installed when we recompile bash dynamically in chapter 6, so you can ignore it.

When we tested it with the latest Debian version, the last two commands were executed because the install process didn't return with a value larger than 0. But you would do good to check if you have the `$LFS/bin/sh` symlink on your LFS partition. If not, run the last two commands manually now.

Command explanations

`--enable-static-link:` This configure option causes Bash to be linked statically

`--prefix=$LFS/usr:` This configure option installs all of Bash's files under the $LFS/usr directory, which becomes the /usr directory when chroot'ed or reboot'ed into LFS.

`--bindir=$LFS/bin:` This installs the executable files in $LFS/bin. We do this because we want bash to be in /bin, not in /usr/bin. One reason being: the /usr partition might be on a separate partition which has to be mounted at some point. Before that partition is mounted you need and will want to have bash available (it will be hard to execute the boot scripts without a shell for instance).

`--with-curses:` This causes Bash to be linked against the curses library instead of the default termcap library which is becoming obsolete.

It is not strictly necessary for the static bash to be linked against libncurses (it can link against a static termcap for the time being just fine because we will reinstall Bash in chapter 6 anyways, where we will use libncurses), but it's a good test to make sure that the ncurses package has been installed properly. If not, you will get in trouble later on in this chapter when you install the Texinfo package. That package requires ncurses and termcap can't reliably be used there.

`ln -sf bash sh:` This command creates the sh symlink that points to bash. Most scripts run themselves via 'sh' (invoked by the #!/bin/sh as the first line in the scripts) which invokes a special bash mode. Bash will then behave (as closely as possible) as the original Bourne shell.

The **`&&`**'s at the end of every line cause the next command to be executed only if the previous command exists with a return value of 0 indicating success. In case all of these commands are copy&pasted on the shell, is is important to be ensured that if ./configure fails, make isn't being executed and, likewise, if make fails, that make install isn't being executed, and so forth.

Contents

The Bash package contains the bash program

Description

Bash is the Bourne−Again SHell, which is a widely used command interpreter on Unix systems. Bash is a program that reads from standard input, the keyboard. A user types something and the program will evaluate what he has typed and do something with it, like running a program.

Dependencies

Bash−2.05 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package size from t

Installing Binutils–2.11.2

```
Estimated build time:           6 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  96 MB
```

Installation of Binutils

This package is known to behave badly when you have changed its default optimization flags (including the –march and –mcpu options). Binutils is best left alone, so we recommend you unsetting CFLAGS, CXXFLAGS and other such variables/settings that would change the default optimization that it comes with.

Install Binutils by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$LFS/usr --disable-nls &&
make LDFLAGS=-all-static tooldir=$LFS/usr &&
make tooldir=$LFS/usr install
```

Command explanations

`--disable-nls:` This option disabled internationalization (also known as i18n). We don't need this for our static programs and nls often causes problems when you're linking statically.

`LDFLAGS=-all-static:` Setting the variable LDFLAGS to the value –all–static causes binutils to be linked statically.

`tooldir=$LFS/usr:` Normally, the tooldir (the directory where the executables from binutils end up in) is set to $(exec_prefix)/$(target_alias) which expands into, for example, /usr/i686–pc–linux–gnu. Since we only build for our own system, we don't need this target specific directory in $LFS/usr. That setup would be used if the system was used to cross–compile (for example compiling a package on the Intel machine that generates code that can be executed on Apple PowerPC machines).

Contents

The Binutils package contains the addr2line, as, ar, c++filt, gasp, gprof, ld, nm, objcopy, objdump, ranlib, readelf, size, strings and strip programs

Description

addr2line

addr2line translates program addresses into file names and line numbers. Given an address and an executable, it uses the debugging information in the executable to figure out which file name and line number are associated with a given address.

as

as is primarily intended to assemble the output of the GNU C compiler gcc for use by the linker ld.

ar

The ar program creates, modifies, and extracts from archives. An archive is a single file holding a collection of other files in a structure that makes it possible to retrieve the original individual files (called members of the archive).

c++filt

The C++ language provides function overloading, which means that it is possible to write many functions with the same name (providing each takes parameters of different types). All C++ function names are encoded into a low−level assembly label (this process is known as mangling). The c++filt program does the inverse mapping: it decodes (demangles) low−level names into user−level names so that the linker can keep these overloaded functions from clashing.

gasp

Gasp is the Assembler Macro Preprocessor.

gprof

gprof displays call graph profile data.

ld

ld combines a number of object and archive files, relocates their data and ties up symbol references. Often the last step in building a new compiled program to run is a call to ld.

nm

nm lists the symbols from object files.

objcopy

objcopy utility copies the contents of an object file to another. objcopy uses the GNU BFD Library to read and write the object files. It can write the destination object file in a format different from that of the source object file.

objdump

objdump displays information about one or more object files. The options control what particular information to display. This information is mostly useful to programmers who are working on the compilation tools, as opposed to programmers who just want their program to compile and work.

ranlib

ranlib generates an index to the contents of an archive, and stores it in the archive. The index lists each symbol defined by a member of an archive that is a relocatable object file.

readelf

readelf displays information about elf type binaries.

size

size lists the section sizes −−and the total size−− for each of the object files objfile in its argument list. By default, one line of output is generated for each object file or each module in an archive.

strings

For each file given, strings prints the printable character sequences that are at least 4 characters long (or the number specified with an option to the program) and are followed by an unprintable character. By default, it only prints the strings from the initialized and loaded sections of object files; for other types of files, it prints the strings from the whole file.

strings is mainly useful for determining the contents of non−text files.

strip

strip discards all or specific symbols from object files. The list of object files may include archives. At least one object file must be given. strip modifies the files named in its argument, rather than writing modified copies under different names.

Dependencies

Binutils−2.11.2 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from th

Installing Bzip2–1.0.1

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  3 MB
```

Installation of Bzip2

Install Bzip2 by running the following commands:

```
make CC="gcc -static" &&
make PREFIX=$LFS/usr install &&
cd $LFS/usr/bin &&
mv bzcat bunzip2 bzip2 bzip2recover $LFS/bin
```

Although it's not strictly a part of a basic LFS system it's worth mentioning that a patch for Tar can be downloaded which enables the tar program to compress and uncompress using bzip2/bunzip2 easily. With a plain tar, you have to use constructions like bzcat file.tar.bz|tar xv or tar −−use−compress−prog=bunzip2 −xvf file.tar.bz2 to use bzip2 and bunzip2 with tar. This patch provides the −j option so you can unpack a Bzip2 archive with tar xvfj file.tar.bz2. Applying this patch will be mentioned later on when the Tar package is installed.

Command explanations

`make CC="gcc -static":` This is the method we use to tell gcc that we want bzip2 to be linked statically.

Contents

The Bzip2 packages contains the bunzip2, bzcat, bzip2 and bzip2recover programs.

Description

bunzip2

Bunzip2 decompresses files that are compressed with bzip2.

bzcat

bzcat (or bzip2 −dc) decompresses all specified files to the standard output.

bzip2

bzip2 compresses files using the Burrows−Wheeler block sorting text compression algorithm, and Huffman coding. Compression is generally considerably better than that achieved by more conventional LZ77/LZ78−based compressors, and approaches the performance of the PPM family of statistical compressors.

bzip2recover

bzip2recover recovers data from damaged bzip2 files.

Dependencies

Bzip2−1.0.1 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cp from th

Installing Diffutils–2.7

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  4 MB
```

Installation of Diffutils

When installing Diffutils using glibc–2.1.x on your base system, it may be necessary to use a fix to prevent a variable name conflict. The following commands can be used in this case. Note that these commands can also be used for other glibc versions so if you aren't sure, then use the first version.

```
export CPPFLAGS=-Dre_max_failures=re_max_failures2 &&
./configure --prefix=$LFS/usr &&
unset CPPFLAGS &&
make LDFLAGS=-static &&
make install
```

If you are using a newer glibc version (2.2.x), you can use the following commands to install Diffutils:

```
./configure --prefix=$LFS/usr &&
make LDFLAGS=-static &&
make install
```

Command explanations

CPPFLAGS=-Dre_max_failures=re_max_failures2: The CPPFLAGS variable is a variable that's read by the cpp program (C PreProcessor). The value of this variable tells the preprocessor to replace every instance of re_max_failures it finds by re_max_failures2 before handing the source file to the compiler itself for compilation. This package has problems linking statically on systems that run an older Glibc version and this construction fixes that problem.

Contents

The Diffutils package contains the cmp, diff, diff3 and sdiff programs.

Description

cmp and diff

cmp and diff both compare two files and report their differences. Both programs have extra options which compare files in different situations.

diff3

The difference between diff and diff3 is that diff compares 2 files, diff3 compares 3 files.

sdiff

sdiff merges two files and interactively outputs the results.

Dependencies

Diffutils−2.7 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ld from the binutils package as from the binutils package chmod from the fileutils package cp fro

Installing Fileutils–4.1

```
Estimated build time:           3 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  25 MB
```

Installation of Fileutils

The programs from a statically linked fileutils package may cause segmentation faults on certain systems, if your distribution has Glibc–2.2.3 or higher installed. It also seems to happen mostly on machines powered by an AMD CPU, but there is a case or two where an Intel system is affected as well. If your system falls under this category, try the following fix.

Note that in some cases using these sed commands will result in problems not being able to compile this package at all, even when your system has an AMD CPU and has Glibc–2.2.3 (or higher) installed. If that's the case, you'll need to remove the fileutils–4.1 directory and unpack it again from the tarball before continuing. We believe this may be the case when your distribution has altered Glibc–2.2.3 somehow, but details are unavailable at the time.

To fix this package to compile properly on AMD/Glibc–2.2.3 machines, run the following commands. Do *not* attempt this fix if you don't have Glibc–2.2.3 installed. It will more than likely result in all kinds of compile time problems.

```
cp lib/Makefile.in lib/Makefile.in.backup &&
sed -e 's/\(.*\)\(fopen-safer\.c \)\\/\1\2atexit.c \\/' \
   -e 's/\(.*\)\(idcache\$U\.\$.*\)\\/\1\2atexit$U.$(OBJEXT) \\/' \
   lib/Makefile.in > lib/Makefile.in~ &&
mv lib/Makefile.in~ lib/Makefile.in
```

Install fileutils by running the following commands:

```
./configure --disable-nls \
   --prefix=$LFS/usr --libexecdir=$LFS/bin --bindir=$LFS/bin &&
make LDFLAGS=-static &&
make install &&
cd $LFS/usr/bin &&
ln -sf ../../bin/install
```

Once you have installed fileutils, you can test whether the segmentation fault problem has been avoided by running **`$LFS/bin/ls`**. If this works, then you are OK. If not, then you need to re–do the installation using the sed commands if you didn't use them, or without the sed commands if you did use them.

Command explanations

`cp lib/Makefile.in lib/Makefile.in.backup :` We run this command in order to keep a backup of the file we are about to change.

```
cp lib/Makefile.in lib/Makefile.in.backup &&
sed -e 's/\(.*\)\(fopen-safer\.c \)\\/\1\2atexit.c \\/' \
   -e 's/\(.*\)\(idcache\$U\.\$.*\)\\/\1\2atexit$U.$(OBJEXT) \\/' \
   lib/Makefile.in > lib/Makefile.in~ &&
mv lib/Makefile.in~ lib/Makefile.in:
```

This is used to fix a problem with building fileutils statically on glibc 2.2.3 systems. If this isn't done, then there is the possibility of all of the fileutils programs causing segmentation faults once chroot is entered in chapter 6.

`--libexecdir=$LFS/bin:` This configure option will set the program executable directory to $LFS/bin. This is normally set to /usr/libexec, but nothing is placed in it. Changing it just prevents that directory from being created.

Contents

The Fileutils package contains the chgrp, chmod, chown, cp, dd, df, dir, dircolors, du, install, ln, ls, mkdir, mkfifo, mknod, mv, rm, rmdir, shred, sync, touch and vdir programs.

Description

chgrp

chgrp changes the group ownership of each given file to the named group, which can be either a group name or a numeric group ID.

chmod

chmod changes the permissions of each given file according to mode, which can be either a symbolic representation of changes to make, or an octal number representing the bit pattern for the new permissions.

chown

chown changes the user and/or group ownership of each given file.

cp

cp copies files from one place to another.

dd

dd copies a file (from the standard input to the standard output, by default) with a user−selectable blocksize, while optionally performing conversions on it.

df

df displays the amount of disk space available on the filesystem containing each file name argument. If no file name is given, the space available on all currently mounted filesystems is shown.

dir, ls and vdir

dir and vdir are versions of ls with different default output formats. These programs list each given file or directory name. Directory contents are sorted alphabetically. For ls, files are by default listed in columns, sorted vertically, if the standard output is a terminal; otherwise they are listed one per line. For dir, files are

by default listed in columns, sorted vertically. For vdir, files are by default listed in long format.

dircolors

dircolors outputs commands to set the LS_COLOR environment variable. The LS_COLOR variable is use to change the default color scheme used by ls and related utilities.

du

du displays the amount of disk space used by each argument and for each subdirectory of directory arguments.

install

install copies files and sets their permission modes and, if possible, their owner and group.

ln

ln makes hard or soft (symbolic) links between files.

mkdir

mkdir creates directories with a given name.

mkfifo

mkfifo creates a FIFO with each given name.

mknod

mknod creates a FIFO, character special file, or block special file with the given file name.

mv

mv moves files from one directory to another or renames files, depending on the arguments given to mv.

rm

rm removes files or directories.

rmdir

rmdir removes directories, if they are empty.

shred

shred deletes a file securely, overwriting it first so that its contents can't be recovered.

sync

sync forces changed blocks to disk and updates the super block.

touch

touch changes the access and modification times of each given file to the current time. Files that do not exist are created empty.

Dependencies

Fileutils−4.1 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from
from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package ls from the fileutils package mkdir from the fileutils package mv fr

Installing GCC–2.95.3

```
Estimated build time:           22 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  168 MB
```

Installation of GCC

This package is known to behave badly when you have changed its default optimization flags (including the –march and –mcpu options). GCC is best left alone, so we recommend you unsetting CFLAGS, CXXFLAGS and other such variables/settings that would change the default optimization that it comes with.

Install GCC by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../gcc-2.95.3-2.patch &&
mkdir ../gcc-build &&
cd ../gcc-build &&
../gcc-2.95.3/configure --prefix=/usr --enable-languages=c,c++ \
   --disable-nls --disable-shared --enable-threads=posix &&
make BOOT_LDFLAGS=-static bootstrap &&
make prefix=$LFS/usr install &&
cd $LFS/lib &&
ln -sf ../usr/bin/cpp &&
cd $LFS/usr/lib &&
ln -sf ../bin/cpp &&
cd $LFS/usr/bin &&
ln -sf gcc cc
```

Command explanations

`patch -Np1 -i ../gcc-2.95.3-2.patch:` This new patch deals with incorrect handling of weak symbols, the over–optimization of calls to those weak symbols, an atexit issue and the __dso_handle symbol required for atexit's proper function.

`make BOOT_LDFLAGS=-static:` This is the equivalent to make LDFLAGS=–static as we use with other packages to compile them statically.

`--prefix=/usr:` This is NOT a typo. GCC hard codes some paths while compiling and so we need to pass /usr as the prefix during ./configure. We pass the real install prefix during the make install command later.

`--enable-languages=c,c++:` This only builds the C and C++ compilers and not the other available compilers as they are, on the average, not often used. If those other compilers are needed, the ––enable–languages parameter can be omitted.

`--enable-threads=posix:` This enables C++ exception handling for multithreaded code.

`ln -sf ../usr/bin/cpp:` This creates the $LFS/lib/cpp symlink. Some packages explicitly try to find cpp in /lib.

`ln -sf ../bin/cpp:` This creates the $LFS/usr/lib/cpp symlink as there are packages that expect cpp to be in /usr/lib.

Contents

The GCC package contains compilers, preprocessors and the GNU C++ Library.

Description

Compiler

A compiler translates source code in text format to a format that a computer understands. After a source code file is compiled into an object file, a linker will create an executable file from one or more of these compiler generated object files.

Preprocessor

A preprocessor pre−processes a source file, such as including the contents of header files into the source file. It's a good idea to not do this manually to save a lot of time. Someone just inserts a line like #include <filename>. The preprocessor inserts the contents of that file into the source file. That's one of the things a preprocessor does.

C++ Library

The C++ library is used by C++ programs. The C++ library contains functions that are frequently used in C++ programs. This way the programmer doesn't have to write certain functions (such as writing a string of text to the screen) from scratch every time he creates a program.

Dependencies

GCC−2.95.3 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from th from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package chmod from the fileutils package cp from the fileutils package ln

Installing Grep–2.4.2

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  4 MB
```

Installation of Grep

When installing Grep using glibc–2.1.x on your base system, it may be necessary to use a fix to prevent a variable name conflict. The following commands can be used in this case. Note that these commands can also be used for other glibc versions so if you aren't sure, then use the first version.

```
export CPPFLAGS=-Dre_max_failures=re_max_failures2 &&
./configure --prefix=$LFS/usr --disable-nls &&
unset CPPFLAGS &&
make LDFLAGS=-static &&
make install
```

If you are using a newer glibc version (2.2.x), you can use the following commands to install Grep:

```
./configure --prefix=$LFS/usr --disable-nls &&
make LDFLAGS=-static &&
make install
```

Contents

The grep package contains the egrep, fgrep and grep programs.

Description

egrep

egrep prints lines from files matching an extended regular expression pattern.

fgrep

fgrep prints lines from files matching a list of fixed strings, separated by newlines, any of which is to be matched.

grep

grep prints lines from files matching a basic regular expression pattern.

Dependencies

Grep–2.4.2 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Installing Gzip–1.2.4a

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  2 MB
```

Installation of Gzip

Before Gzip is installed, the patch file may need to be applied. This patch file is necessary to avoid a conflict of variable names with Glibc–2.0 systems when compiling and linking statically and so is only required if your base system runs Glibc–2.0. It is however safe to apply the patch even if you are running a different glibc version, so if you aren't sure, it's best to apply it.

Apply the patch by running the following command:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../gzip-1.2.4a.patch
```

Install Gzip by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$LFS/usr &&
make LDFLAGS=-static &&
make install &&
cp $LFS/usr/bin/gunzip $LFS/usr/bin/gzip $LFS/bin &&
rm $LFS/usr/bin/gunzip $LFS/usr/bin/gzip
```

Contents

The Gzip package contains the compress, gunzip, gzexe, gzip, uncompress, zcat, zcmp, zdiff, zforce, zgrep, zmore and znew programs.

Description

gunzip, uncompress

gunzip and uncompress decompress files which are compressed with gzip.

gzexe

gzexe allows you to compress executables in place and have them automatically uncompress and execute when they are run (at a penalty in performance).

gzip

gzip reduces the size of the named files using Lempel–Ziv coding (LZ77).

zcat

zcat uncompresses either a list of files on the command line or its standard input and writes the uncompressed data on standard output

zcmp

zcmp invokes the cmp program on compressed files.

zdiff

zdiff invokes the diff program on compressed files.

zforce

zforce forces a .gz extension on all gzip files so that gzip will not compress them twice. This can be useful for files with names truncated after a file transfer.

zgrep

zgrep invokes the grep program on compressed files.

zmore

zmore is a filter which allows examination of compressed or plain text files one screen at a time on a soft−copy terminal (similar to the more program).

znew

znew re−compresses files from .Z (compress) format to .gz (gzip) format.

Dependencies

Gzip−1.2.4a needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from the binutils package chmod fr

Installing Linux Kernel–2.4.16

```
Estimated build time:           3 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  132 MB
```

Installation of the Linux Kernel

We won't be compiling a new kernel image yet. We'll do that after we have finished the installation of the basic system software in this chapter. But because certain software needs the kernel header files, we're going to unpack the kernel archive now and set it up so that we can compile the packages that need the kernel.

The kernel configuration file is created by running the following command:

```
make mrproper &&
yes "" | make config &&
make dep &&
cd $LFS/usr/include &&
cp -a ../src/linux/include/linux . &&
chown -R root.root $LFS/usr/include/linux &&
mkdir asm &&
cp -a ../src/linux/include/asm/* asm &&
chown -R root.root $LFS/usr/include/asm
```

Command explanations

`make mrproper`: This will ensure that the kernel tree is absolutely clean.

`yes "" | make config`: This runs make config and answers with the default answer to every question the config script asks the user (it does this by simply doing the equivalent of hitting the Enter key, thus accepting the default Y and N answers to the questions). We're not configuring the real kernel here, we just need to have some sort of configure file created so that we can run make dep next that will create a few files in $LFS/usr/src/linux/include/linux, like version.h, among others, that we will need to compile Glibc and other packages later in chroot.

`make dep`: make dep checks dependencies and sets up the dependencies file. We don't really care about the dependency checks, but what we do care about is that make dep creates those aforementioned files in $LFS/usr/src/linux/include/linux we will be needing later on.

`cp -a ../src/linux/include/linux .` and **`mkdir asm && cp -a ../src/linux/include/asm/* asm`**: These commands copy the kernel headers in the `$LFS/usr/include` directory.

`chown -R root.root $LFS/usr/include/linux` and **`chown -R root.root $LFS/usr/include/asm`**: These commands change the ownership of the `$LFS/usr/include/linux` and the `$LFS/usr/include/asm` directories, plus all the files contained therein to the user root and group root.

Why we copy the kernel headers and don't symlink them

In the past, it was common practice for people to symlink the /usr/include/linux and asm directories to /usr/src/linux/include/linux and asm respectively. This is a *bad* idea as this extract from a post by Linus Torvalds to the Linux Kernel Mailing List points out:

```
I would suggest that people who compile new kernels should:

 - not have a single symbolic link in sight (except the one that the
   kernel build itself sets up, namely the "linux/include/asm" symlink
   that is only used for the internal kernel compile itself)

And yes, this is what I do. My /usr/src/linux still has the old 2.2.13
header files, even though I haven't run a 2.2.13 kernel in a _loong_
time. But those headers were what glibc was compiled against, so those
headers are what matches the library object files.

And this is actually what has been the suggested environment for at
least the last five years. I don't know why the symlink business keeps
on living on, like a bad zombie. Pretty much every distribution still
has that broken symlink, and people still remember that the linux
sources should go into "/usr/src/linux" even though that hasn't been
true in a _loong_ time.
```

The relevant part here is where he states that the headers should be the ones which *glibc was compiled against*. These are the headers which should remain accessible and so by copying them, we ensure that we follow these guidelines. Also note that as long as you don't have those symlinks, it is perfectly alright to have the kernel sources in `/usr/src/linux`.

Contents

The Linux kernel package contains the Linux kernel.

Description

The Linux kernel is at the core of every Linux system. It's what makes Linux tick. When a computer is turned on and boots a Linux system, the very first piece of Linux software that gets loaded is the kernel. The kernel initializes the system's hardware components such as serial ports, parallel ports, sound cards, network cards, IDE controllers, SCSI controllers and a lot more. In a nutshell the kernel makes the hardware available so that the software can run.

Dependencies

Linux−2.4.8 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from th

Installing Make–3.79.1

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  6 MB
```

Installation of Make

Install Make by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$LFS/usr --disable-nls &&
make LDFLAGS=-static &&
make install
```

Contents

The Make package contains the make program.

Description

make determines automatically which pieces of a large program need to be recompiled, and issues the commands to recompile them.

Dependencies

Make−3.79.1 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package chgrp fr

Installing Mawk–1.3.3

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  2 MB
```

Installation of Mawk

Install Mawk by running the following commands:

```
./configure &&
make CC="gcc -static" &&
make BINDIR=$LFS/usr/bin \
   MANDIR=$LFS/usr/share/man/man1 install
```

Command explanations

`make CC="gcc -static"` This is used to build mawk statically.

Contents

The Mawk package contains the mawk program.

Description

mawk

Mawk is an interpreter for the AWK Programming Language. The AWK language is useful for manipulation of data files, text retrieval and processing, and for prototyping and experimenting with algorithms.

Dependencies

Mawk–1.3.3 needs the following to be installed:

chmod from the fileutils package cp from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package rm from the fileutils package as

Installing Patch–2.5.4

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  2 MB
```

Installation of Patch

Install Patch by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$LFS/usr &&
make LDFLAGS=-static &&
make install
```

Contents

The Patch package contains the patch program.

Description

The patch program modifies a file according to a patch file. A patch file usually is a list created by the diff program that contains instructions on how an original file needs to be modified. Patch is used a lot for source code patches since it saves time and space. Imagine a package that is 1MB in size. The next version of that package only has changes in two files of the first version. It can be shipped as an entirely new package of 1MB or just as a patch file of 1KB which will update the first version to make it identical to the second version. So if the first version was downloaded already, a patch file avoids a second large download.

Dependencies

Patch–2.5.4 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package chmod f

Installing Sed–3.02

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  2 MB
```

Installation of Sed

When installing Sed using glibc–2.1.x on your base system, it may be necessary to use a fix to prevent a variable name conflict. The following commands can be used in this case. Note that these commands can also be used for other glibc versions so if you aren't sure, then use the first version.

```
export CPPFLAGS=-Dre_max_failures=re_max_failures2 &&
./configure --prefix=$LFS/usr --bindir=$LFS/bin &&
unset CPPFLAGS &&
make LDFLAGS=-static &&
make install
```

If you are using a newer glibc version (2.2.x), you can use the following commands to install Sed:

```
./configure --prefix=$LFS/usr --bindir=$LFS/bin &&
make LDFLAGS=-static &&
make install
```

Contents

The Sed package contains the sed program.

Description

sed is a stream editor. A stream editor is used to perform basic text transformations on an input stream (a file or input from a pipeline).

Dependencies

Sed–3.02 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Installing Sh−utils−2.0

```
Estimated build time:           2 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  23 MB
```

Installation of Sh−utils

Before Sh−utils is installed, the sh−utils patch file may need to be applied. This patch is needed to avoid a conflict of variable names with certain Glibc versions (usually glibc−2.1.x) when compiling sh−utils statically. It is however safe to apply the patch even if you are running a different glibc version, so if you aren't sure, it's best to apply it.

Apply the patch by running the following command:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../sh-utils-2.0.patch
```

Install Sh−utils by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$LFS/usr --disable-nls &&
make LDFLAGS=-static &&
make install &&
cd $LFS/usr/bin &&
mv date echo false pwd stty $LFS/bin &&
mv su true uname hostname $LFS/bin
```

Contents

The Sh−utils package contains the basename, chroot, date, dirname, echo, env, expr, factor, false, groups, hostid, hostname, id, logname, nice, nohup, pathchk, pinky, printenv, printf, pwd, seq, sleep, stty, su, tee, test, true, tty, uname, uptime, users, who, whoami and yes programs.

Description

basename

basename strips directory and suffixes from filenames.

chroot

chroot runs a command or interactive shell with special root directory.

date

date displays the current time in a specified format, or sets the system date.

dirname

dirname strips non−directory suffixes from file name.

echo

echo displays a line of text.

env

env runs a program in a modified environment.

expr

expr evaluates expressions.

factor

factor prints the prime factors of all specified integer numbers.

false

false always exits with a status code indicating failure.

groups

groups prints the groups a user is in.

hostid

hostid prints the numeric identifier (in hexadecimal) for the current host.

hostname

hostname sets or prints the name of the current host system

id

id prints the real and effective UIDs and GIDs of a user or the current user.

logname

logname prints the current user's login name.

nice

nice runs a program with modified scheduling priority.

nohup

nohup runs a command immune to hangups, with output to a non−tty

pathchk

pathchk checks whether file names are valid or portable.

pinky

pinky is a lightweight finger utility which retrieves information about a certain user

printenv

printenv prints all or part of the environment.

printf

printf formats and prints data (the same as the printf C function).

pwd

pwd prints the name of the current/working directory

seq

seq prints numbers in a certain range with a certain increment.

sleep

sleep delays for a specified amount of time.

stty

stty changes and prints terminal line settings.

su

su runs a shell with substitute user and group IDs

tee

tee reads from standard input and writes to standard output and files.

test

test checks file types and compares values.

true

True always exits with a status code indicating success.

tty

tty prints the file name of the terminal connected to standard input.

uname

uname prints system information.

uptime

uptime tells how long the system has been running.

users

users prints the user names of users currently logged in to the current host.

who

who shows who is logged on.

whoami

whoami prints the user's effective userid.

yes

yes outputs a string repeatedly until killed.

Dependencies

Sh−utils−2.0 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Installing Tar–1.13

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  7 MB
```

Installation of Tar

To be able to directly use bzip2 files with tar, use the tar patch available from the LFS FTP site. This patch will add the –j option to tar which works the same as the –z option to tar (which can be used for gzip files).

Apply the patch by running the following command:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../tar-1.13.patch
```

Install Tar by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$LFS/usr --disable-nls \
   --libexecdir=$LFS/usr/bin --bindir=$LFS/bin &&
make LDFLAGS=-static &&
make install
```

Contents

The tar package contains the rmt and tar programs.

Description

rmt

rmt is a program used by the remote dump and restore programs in manipulating a magnetic tape drive through an interprocess communication connection.

tar

tar is an archiving program designed to store and extract files from an archive file known as a tar file.

Dependencies

Tar–1.13 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Installing Texinfo–4.0

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  11 MB
```

Installation of Texinfo

Install Texinfo by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$LFS/usr --disable-nls &&
make LDFLAGS=-static &&
make install
```

Contents

The Texinfo package contains the info, install–info, makeinfo, texi2dvi and texindex programs

Description

info

The info program reads Info documents, usually contained in the /usr/doc/info directory. Info documents are like man(ual) pages, but they tend to be more in depth than just explaining the options to a program.

install–info

The install–info program updates the info entries. When the info program is run a list with available topics (ie: available info documents) will be presented. The install–info program is used to maintain this list of available topics. If info files are removed manually, it is also necessary to delete the topic in the index file as well. This program is used for that. It also works the other way around when info documents are added.

makeinfo

The makeinfo program translates Texinfo source documents into various formats. Available formats are: info files, plain text and HTML.

texi2dvi

The texi2dvi program prints Texinfo documents

texindex

The texindex program is used to sort Texinfo index files.

Dependencies

Texinfo–4.0 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Installing Textutils–2.0

```
Estimated build time:           2 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  24 MB
```

Installation of Textutils

Install Textutils by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=$LFS/usr --disable-nls &&
make LDFLAGS=-static &&
make install &&
mv $LFS/usr/bin/cat $LFS/bin
```

Contents

The Textutils package contains the cat, cksum, comm, csplit, cut, expand, fmt, fold, head, join, md5sum, nl, od, paste, pr, ptx, sort, split, sum, tac, tail, tr, tsort, unexpand, uniq and wc programs.

Description

cat

cat concatenates file(s) or standard input to standard output.

cksum

cksum prints CRC checksum and byte counts of each specified file.

comm

comm compares two sorted files line by line.

csplit

csplit outputs pieces of a file separated by (a) pattern(s) to files xx01, xx02, ..., and outputs byte counts of each piece to standard output.

cut

cut prints selected parts of lines from specified files to standard output.

expand

expand converts tabs in files to spaces, writing to standard output.

fmt

fmt reformats each paragraph in the specified file(s), writing to standard output.

fold

fold wraps input lines in each specified file (standard input by default), writing to standard output.

head

Print first xx (10 by default) lines of each specified file to standard output.

join

join joins lines of two files on a common field.

md5sum

md5sum prints or checks MD5 checksums.

nl

nl writes each specified file to standard output, with line numbers added.

od

od writes an unambiguous representation, octal bytes by default, of a specified file to standard output.

paste

paste writes lines consisting of the sequentially corresponding lines from each specified file, separated by TABs, to standard output.

pr

pr paginates or columnates files for printing.

ptx

ptx produces a permuted index of file contents.

sort

sort writes sorted concatenation of files to standard output.

split

split outputs fixed−size pieces of an input file to PREFIXaa, PREFIXab, ...

sum

sum prints checksum and block counts for each specified file.

tac

tac writes each specified file to standard output, last line first.

tail

tail print the last xx (10 by default) lines of each specified file to standard output.

tr

tr translates, squeezes, and/or deletes characters from standard input, writing to standard output.

tsort

tsort writes totally ordered lists consistent with the partial ordering in specified files.

unexpand

unexpand converts spaces in each file to tabs, writing to standard output.

uniq

Uniq removes duplicate lines from a sorted file.

wc

wc prints line, word, and byte counts for each specified file, and a total line if more than one file is specified.

Dependencies

Textutils−2.0 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Creating passwd and group files

In order for the user and group root to be recognized and to be able to login, there needs to be an entry in the /etc/passwd and /etc/group file. Besides the group root, a couple of other groups are recommended and needed by packages. The groups with their GID's below aren't part of any standard. The LSB only recommends besides a group root a group bin to be present with GID 1. Other group names and GID's can be chosen by the user. Well written packages don't depend on GID numbers but just use the group name, since it doesn't matter which GID a group has. Since there aren't any standards for groups The groups created here are the groups the MAKEDEV script (the script that creates the device files in the /dev directory) mentions.

Create a new file `$LFS/etc/passwd` by running the following command:

```
echo "root:x:0:0:root:/root:/bin/bash" > $LFS/etc/passwd
```

Create a new file `$LFS/etc/group` by running the following:

```
cat > $LFS/etc/group << "EOF"
root:x:0:
bin:x:1:
sys:x:2:
kmem:x:3:
tty:x:4:
tape:x:5:
daemon:x:6:
floppy:x:7:
disk:x:8:
lp:x:9:
dialout:x:10:
audio:x:11:
EOF
```

Copying old NSS library files

If your normal Linux system runs Glibc−2.0, you need to copy the NSS library files to the LFS partition. Certain statically linked programs still depend on the NSS library, especially programs that need to lookup usernames, userid's and groupid's. You can check which C library version your normal Linux system uses by simply executing the library, like this:

```
/lib/libc.so.6
```

The first line will give you the release version. Following lines contain interesting information. If you have Glibc−2.0.x installed on your starting distribution, copy the NSS library files by running:

```
cp -av /lib/libnss* $LFS/lib
```

Mounting $LFS/proc file system

In order for certain programs to function properly, the proc file system must be mounted and available from within the chroot'ed environment as well. It's not a problem to mount the proc file system twice or even more than that, since it's a virtual file system maintained by the kernel itself.

The proc file system is mounted under $LFS/proc by running the following command:

```
mount proc $LFS/proc -t proc
```

Chapter 6. Installing basic system software

Introduction

The installation of all the software is pretty straightforward and you will probably think it's so much easier and shorter to give the generic installation instructions for each package and only explain how to install something if a certain package requires an alternate installation method. Although I agree on that, I choose to give the full instructions for each and every package. This is simply to avoid any possible confusion and errors.

Now would be a good time to take a look at the optimization hint at http://hints.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/optimization.txt if you plan on using compiler optimization for the packages installed in the following chapter. Compiler optimization can make a program run faster, but may also cause some compilation problems. If you run into problems after having used optimization, always try it without optimizing to see if you can reproduce the problem.

About debugging symbols

Most programs and libraries by default are compiled with debugging symbols (gcc option –g).

A program compiled with debugging symbols means a user can run a program or library through a debugger and the debugger's output will be user friendly. These debugging symbols also enlarge the program or library significantly.

Before you start wondering whether these debugging symbols really make a big difference, here are some statistics. Use them to draw your own conclusion.

- A dynamic Bash binary with debugging symbols: 1.2MB
- A dynamic Bash binary without debugging symbols: 478KB
- /lib and /usr/lib (glibc and gcc files) with debugging symbols: 87MB
- /lib and /usr/lib (glibc and gcc files) without debugging symbols: 16MB

Sizes vary depending on which compiler was used and which C library version was used to link dynamic programs against, but results will be similar if you compare programs with and without debugging symbols.

To remove debugging symbols from a binary (must be an a.out or ELF binary) run **`strip --strip-debug filename`**. Wildcards can be used to strip debugging symbols from multiple files (use something like **`strip --strip-debug $LFS/usr/bin/*`**). Most people will probably never use a debugger on software, so by removing those symbols a lot of disk space can be regained.

For your convenience, chapter 9 includes one simple command to strip all debugging symbols from all programs and libraries on your system.

You might find additional information in the optimization hint which can be found at http://hints.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/optimization.txt .

Creating $LFS/root/.bash_profile

When we have entered the chroot'ed environment in the next section we want to export a couple of environment variables in that shell such as PS1, PATH and others variables which are good to have set. For that purpose we'll create the $LFS/root/.bash_profile file which will be read by bash when we enter the chroot environment.

Create a new file `$LFS/root/.bash_profile` by running the following.

```
cat > $LFS/root/.bash_profile << "EOF"
# Begin /root/.bash_profile

PS1='\u:\w\$ '
PATH=/bin:/usr/bin:/sbin:/usr/sbin

export PS1 PATH

# End /root/.bash_profile
EOF
```

The PS1 variable is an environment variable that controls the appearance of the command prompt. See the bash man page for details how this variable is constructed. Additional environment variables, aliases and so forth that are needed and/or wanted can be added at your own discretion.

Entering the chroot'ed environment

It's time to enter our chroot'ed environment in order to install the rest of the software we need.

Enter the following commands to enter the chroot'ed environment. From this point on there's no need to use the $LFS variable anymore, because everything a user does will be restricted to the LFS partition (since / is actually /mnt/lfs but the shell doesn't know that).

```
cd $LFS &&
chroot $LFS /usr/bin/env -i HOME=/root \
   TERM=$TERM /bin/bash --login
```

The –i option will clear all environment variables for as long as you are in the chroot'ed environment and only the HOME and TERM variables are set. The TERM=$TERM construction will set the TERM variable inside chroot to the same value as outside chroot which is needed for programs like vim and less to operate properly. If you need other variables present, such as CFLAGS or CXXFLAGS, you need to set them again.

Now that we are inside a chroot'ed environment, we can continue to install all the basic system software. You have to make sure all the following commands in this and following chapters are run from within the chroot'ed environment. If you ever leave this environment for any reason (when rebooting for example) please remember to mount $LFS/proc again and re–enter chroot before continuing with the book.

Note that the bash prompt will contain "I have no name!" This is normal because Glibc hasn't been installed yet.

Dependencies

Chroot needs the following to be installed:

bash from the bash package env from the sh–utils package

Installing Glibc–2.2.4

```
Estimated build time:           46 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  350 MB
```

Installation of Glibc

Before starting to install glibc, you must cd into the glibc–2.2.4 directory and unpack glibc–linuxthreads inside the glibc–2.2.4 directory, not in /usr/src as you normally would do.

This package is known to behave badly when you have changed its default optimization flags (including the –march and –mcpu options). Glibc is best left alone, so we recommend you unsetting CFLAGS, CXXFLAGS and other such variables/settings that would change the default optimization that it comes with.

Install Glibc by running the following commands:

```
mknod -m 0666 /dev/null c 1 3 &&
touch /etc/ld.so.conf &&
cp malloc/Makefile malloc/Makefile.backup &&
sed 's%\$(PERL)%/usr/bin/perl%' malloc/Makefile > tmp~ &&
mv tmp~ malloc/Makefile &&
cp login/Makefile login/Makefile.backup &&
sed 's/root/0/' login/Makefile > tmp~ &&
mv tmp~ login/Makefile &&
mkdir ../glibc-build &&
cd ../glibc-build &&
../glibc-2.2.4/configure --prefix=/usr \
   --enable-add-ons --libexecdir=/usr/bin &&
cp config.make config.make.backup &&
sed 's/cross-compiling = yes/cross-compiling = no/' \
   config.make > tmp~ &&
mv tmp~ config.make &&
make &&
make install &&
make localedata/install-locales &&
exec /bin/bash --login
```

An alternative to running **`make localedata/install-locales`** is to only install those locales which you need or want. This can be achieved using the localedef command. Information on this can be found in the INSTALL file in the glibc–2.2.4 tree.

During the configure stage you will see the following warning:

```
configure: warning:
*** These auxiliary programs are missing or too old: msgfmt
*** some features will be disabled.
*** Check the INSTALL file for required versions.
```

The missing msgfmt (from the gettext package which we will install later in this chapter) is not fatal. The files msgfmt would create are already pre–built, so you won't be missing out on anything. You would only need it if you make changes to the Glibc manual files. Since we don't do this by default, we can safely ignore it.

Command explanations

mknod -m 0666 /dev/null c 1 3: Glibc needs a null device to compile properly. All other devices will be created in the next section.

touch /etc/ld.so.conf One of the final steps of the Glibc installation is running ldconfig to update the dynamic loader cache. If this file doesn't exist, the installation will abort with an error that it can't read the file, so we simply create an empty file (the empty file will have Glibc default to using /lib and /usr/lib which is fine).

sed 's%\$(PERL)%/usr/bin/perl%' malloc/Makefile > tmp~: This sed command searches through `malloc/Makefile` and converts all occurrences of `$(PERL)` to `/usr/bin/perl`. The output is then written to the file `tmp~`. This is done because Glibc can't autodetect perl since it hasn't been installed yet.

mv tmp~ malloc/Makefile: The file `tmp~` is now moved back to `malloc/Makefile`. We do this because when using sed, we can't write straight back to this file so we need to use a temporary file in between.

sed 's/root/0' login/Makefile > tmp~: This sed command replaces all occurences of `root` in `login/Makefile` with 0. This is because as we don't have glibc on the LFS system yet, usernames can't be resolved to their user id's. Therefore, we replace the username root with the id 0.

mv tmp~ login/Makefile: As above, we are using a temporary file (`tmp~`) to store the edited Makefile and then copying it back over the original.

--enable-add-ons: This enables the add-on that we install with Glibc: linuxthreads

--libexecdir=/usr/bin: This will cause the pt_chown program to be installed in the /usr/bin directory.

sed 's/cross-compiling = yes/cross-compiling = no/' config.make > config.make~: This time, we're replacing `cross-compiling = yes` with `cross-compiling = no`. We do this because we are only building for our own system. Cross-compiling is used, for instance, to build a package for an Apple Power PC on an Intel system. The reason Glibc thinks we're cross-compiling is that it can't compile a test program to determine this, so it automatically defaults to a cross-compiler. The reason for the failed program is because Glibc hasn't been installed yet.

mv config.make~ config.make: Again, we are moving the temporary file over the original.

exec /bin/bash: This command will start a new bash shell which will replace the current shell. This is done to get rid of the "I have no name!" message in the command prompt, which was caused by bash's inability to resolve a userid to a username (which in turn was caused by the missing Glibc installation).

Contents

The Glibc package contains the GNU C Library.

Description

The C Library is a collection of commonly used functions in programs. This way a programmer doesn't need to create his own functions for every single task. The most common things like writing a string to the screen are already present and at the disposal of the programmer.

The C library (actually almost every library) come in two flavors: dynamic ones and static ones. In short when a program uses a static C library, the code from the C library will be copied into the executable file. When a program uses a dynamic library, that executable will not contain the code from the C library, but instead a routine that loads the functions from the library at the time the program is run. This means a significant decrease in the file size of a program. The documentation that comes with the C Library describes this in more detail, as it is too complicated to explain here in one or two lines.

Dependencies

Glibc−2.2.4 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package ranlib fron

Creating devices (Makedev−1.4)

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  57 KB
```

Creating devices

Note: the MAKEDEV−1.4.bz2 file you have unpacked is not an archive, so it won't create a directory for you to cd into.

Create the device files by running the following commands:

```
cp MAKEDEV-1.4 /dev/MAKEDEV &&
cd /dev &&
chmod 754 MAKEDEV
```

Now, depending on whether you are going to use devpts or not, you can run one of two commands:

If you do not intend to use devpts, run:

```
./MAKEDEV -v generic
```

If you do intend to use devpts, then run:

```
./MAKEDEV -v generic-nopty
```

Note that if you aren't sure, it's best to use the **`./MAKEDEV -v generic`** command as this will ensure you have the devices you need. If you are sure you are going to use devpts however, the other command makes sure that you don't create a set of devices which you don't require.

MAKEDEV will create hda[1−20] to hdh[1−20] and such but keep in mind that you may not be able to use all of those devices due to kernel limitations regarding the max. number of partitions.

Command explanations

`./MAKEDEV -v generic:` This creates generic devices. Normally, these devices are all the devices you need. It's possible that you are missing some special devices that are needed for your hardware configuration. Create them with ./MAKEDEV −v <device>. The **`generic-nopty`** option does a similar job but skips some devices which are not needed if you are using devpts.

Contents

The MAKEDEV package contains the MAKEDEV script.

Description

MAKEDEV is a script that can help in creating the necessary static device files that usually reside in the /dev directory.

Dependencies

MAKEDEV−1.4 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package chmod from the fileutils package chown from the fileutils package cp from the fileutils package l

Installing Man−pages−1.43

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  5 MB
```

Installation of Man−pages

Before man−pages is installed, the patch file has to be unpacked. Install Man−pages by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../man-pages-1.43.patch &&
make install
```

Command explanations

`patch -Np1 -i ../man-pages-1.43.patch`: We patch the man−pages package to include pages for **`ldd`** and **`ld.so`**.

Contents

The Man−pages package contains various manual pages that don't come with the packages.

Description

Examples of provided manual pages are the manual pages describing all the C and C++ functions, few important /dev/ files and more.

Dependencies

Man−pages−1.39 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package install from the fileutils package make from the make package patch from the patch package

Installing Findutils–4.1

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  3 MB
```

Installing Findutils

Before Findutils is installed the findutils patch file has to be unpacked.

Install Findutils by running the following commands:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../findutils-4.1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make libexecdir=/usr/bin install
```

FHS compliance notes

By default, the location of the updatedb database is in /usr/var. If you would rather be FHS compliant, you may wish to use another location. The following commands use the database file `/var/lib/misc/locatedb` which is FHS compliant.

```
patch -Np1 -i ../findutils-4.1.patch &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make localstatedir=/var/lib/misc &&
make localstatedir=/var/lib/misc libexecdir=/usr/bin install
```

Command explanations

`patch -Np1 -i ../findutils-4.1.patch`: This patch is to fix some compilation errors by avoiding a variable conflict and changing some bad syntax.

Contents

The Findutils package contains the bigram, code, find, frcode, locate, updatedb and xargs programs.

Description

bigram

bigram is used together with code to produce older−style locate databases. To learn more about these last three programs, read the locatedb.5 manual page.

code

code is the ancestor of frcode. It was used in older−style locate databases.

find

The find program searches for files in a directory hierarchy which match a certain criteria. If no criteria is given, it lists all files in the current directory and its subdirectories.

frcode

updatedb runs a program called frcode to compress the list of file names using front−compression, which reduces the database size by a factor of 4 to 5.

locate

Locate scans a database which contain all files and directories on a filesystem. This program lists the files and directories in this database matching a certain criteria. If a user is looking for a file this program will scan the database and tell him exactly where the files he requested are located. This only makes sense if the locate database is fairly up−to−date else it will provide out−of−date information.

updatedb

The updatedb program updates the locate database. It scans the entire file system (including other file system that are currently mounted unless it is told not to do so) and puts every directory and file it finds into the database that's used by the locate program which retrieves this information. It's good practice to update this database once a day to have it up−to−date whenever it is needed.

xargs

The xargs command applies a command to a list of files. If there is a need to perform the same command on multiple files, a file can be created that contains all these files (one per line) and use xargs to perform that command on the list.

Dependencies

Findutils−4.1 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package chmod fro

Installing Mawk–1.3.3

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  2 MB
```

Installation of Mawk

Install Mawk by running the following commands:

```
./configure &&
make &&
make BINDIR=/usr/bin \
   MANDIR=/usr/share/man/man1 install &&
cd /usr/bin &&
ln -sf mawk awk
```

Contents

The Mawk package contains the mawk program.

Description

mawk

Mawk is an interpreter for the AWK Programming Language. The AWK language is useful for manipulation of data files, text retrieval and processing, and for prototyping and experimenting with algorithms.

Dependencies

Mawk–1.3.3 needs the following to be installed:

chmod from the fileutils package cp from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package rm from the fileutils package as

Installing Ncurses–5.2

```
Estimated build time:           6 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  29 MB
```

Installation of Ncurses

Install Ncurses by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --libdir=/lib \
   --with-shared --disable-termcap &&
make &&
make install &&
cd /lib &&
mv *.a /usr/lib &&
chmod 755 *.5.2 &&
cd /usr/lib &&
ln -sf libncurses.a libcurses.a &&
ln -sf ../../lib/libncurses.so &&
ln -sf ../../lib/libcurses.so &&
ln -sf ../../lib/libform.so &&
ln -sf ../../lib/libpanel.so &&
ln -sf ../../lib/libmenu.so
```

Command explanations

--with-shared: This enables the build of the shared ncurses library files.

--disable-termcap: Disabled the compilation of termcap fall back support.

cd /lib && mv *.a /usr/lib : This moves all of the static ncurses library files from /lib to /usr/lib. /lib should only contain the shared files which are essential to the system when /usr may not be mounted.

chmod 755 *.5.2: Shared libraries should be executable. Ncurses install routine doesn't set the permissions properly so we do it manually instead.

ln -sf libncurses.a libcurses.a: Some programs try to link using –lcurses instead of –lncurses. This symlink ensures that such programs will link without errors.

ln -sf ../../lib/libncurses.so etc: These links are created because if they aren't, the linker will not find the dynamic libraries when linking and so link all programs with the static versions.

Contents

The Ncurses package contains the ncurses, panel, menu and form libraries. It also contains the clear, infocmp, tic, toe, tput and tset programs.

Description

The libraries

The libraries that make up the Ncurses library are used to display text (often in a fancy way) on the screen. An example where ncurses is used is in the kernel's "make menuconfig" process. The libraries contain routines to create panels, menu's, form and general text display routines.

clear

The clear program clears the screen if this is possible. It looks in the environment for the terminal type and then in the terminfo database to figure out how to clear the screen.

infocmp

The infocmp program can be used to compare a binary terminfo entry with other terminfo entries, rewrite a terminfo description to take advantage of the use= terminfo field, or print out a terminfo description from the binary file (term) in a variety of formats (the opposite of what tic does).

tic

Tic is the terminfo entry−description compiler. The program translates a terminfo file from source format into the binary format for use with the ncurses library routines. Terminfo files contain information about the capabilities of a terminal.

toe

The toe program lists all available terminal types by primary name with descriptions.

tput

The tput program uses the terminfo database to make the values of terminal−dependent capabilities and information available to the shell, to initialize or reset the terminal, or return the long name of the requested terminal type.

tset

The Tset program initializes terminals so they can be used, but it's not widely used anymore. It's provided for 4.4BSD compatibility.

Dependencies

Ncurses−5.2 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Installing Vim–6.0

```
Estimated build time:           2 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  15 MB
```

Installation of Vim

If you don't like vim to be installed as an editor on the LFS system, you may want to download an alternative and install an editor you prefer. There are a few hints how to install different editors available at http://hints.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/. The hints which are currently available are for Emacs, Joe and nano.

Install Vim by running the following commands:

```
sed '/shUntil\|link shRepeat/{
   /shUntil/N
   /^/i\
   if exists("b:is_kornshell") || exists("b:is_bash")
   p
   /$/i\
   endif
   d
   }' runtime/syntax/sh.vim > sh.vim.fixed &&
mv sh.vim.fixed runtime/syntax/sh.vim &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make CPPFLAGS=-DSYS_VIMRC_FILE=\\\"/etc/vimrc\\\" &&
make install &&
cd /usr/bin &&
ln -sf vim vi
```

If you plan on installing the X Window system on your LFS system, you might want to re–compile Vim after you have installed X. Vim comes with a nice GUI version of the editor which requires X and a few other libraries to be installed. For more information read the Vim documentation.

FHS compliance notes

The FHS says that editors like vim should use /var/lib/<editor> for their temporary state files, like temporary save files for example. If you wish vim to conform to the FHS, you should use this command set instead of the one presented above:

```
sed '/shUntil\|link shRepeat/{
   /shUntil/N
   /^/i\
   if exists("b:is_kornshell") || exists("b:is_bash")
   p
   /$/i\
   endif
   d
   }' runtime/syntax/sh.vim > sh.vim.fixed &&
mv sh.vim.fixed runtime/syntax/sh.vim &&
./configure --prefix=/usr --localstatedir=/var/lib/vim &&
make CPPFLAGS=-DSYS_VIMRC_FILE=\\\"/etc/vimrc\\\" &&
make install &&
cd /usr/bin &&
ln -sf vim vi
```

Command explanations

`sed '/shUntil\|link shRepeat/{...`: This sed command fixes a bug in the `syntax/sh.vim` file that will cause an error message when you edit a shell script using syntax highlighting.

`make CPPFLAGS=-DSYS_VIMRC_FILE=\\\"/etc/vimrc\\\"`: Setting this will cause vim to look for the `/etc/vimrc` file that contains the global vim settings. Normally this file is looked for in `/usr/share/vim`, but `/etc` is a more logical place for this kind of file.

Contents

The Vim package contains the ex, gview, gvim, rgview, rgvim, rview, rvim, view, vim, vimtutor and xxd programs.

Description

ex

ex starts vim in Ex mode.

gview

gview is the GUI version of view.

gvim

gvim is the GUI version of vim.

rgview

rgview is the GUI version of rview.

rgvim

rgvim is the GUI version of rvim.

rview

rview is a restricted version of view. No shell commands can be started and Vim can't be suspended.

rvim

rvim is the restricted version of vim. No shell commands can be started and Vim can't be suspended.

view

view starts vim in read−only mode.

vim

vim starts vim in the normal, default way.

vimtutor

vimtutor starts the Vim tutor.

xxd

xxd makes a hexdump or does the reverse.

Dependencies

Vim−5.8 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ld from the binutils package as from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package diff fro
from the sh−utils package cat from the textutils package tr from the textutils package wc from the textutils package

Installing GCC–2.95.3

```
Estimated build time:           22 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  148 MB
```

Installation of GCC

This package is known to behave badly when you have changed its default optimization flags (including the –march and –mcpu options). GCC is best left alone, so we recommend you unsetting CFLAGS, CXXFLAGS and other such variables/settings that would change the default optimization that it comes with.

Install GCC by running the following commands. These commands will build the C and C++ compiler. Other compilers are available within the gcc package. If you want to build all the other available compilers too, leave out the ––enable–languages=c,c++ option in the configure command. See the GCC documentation for more details on which additional compilers are available.

Note: the build of other compilers is not tested by the people who actively work on LFS.

```
patch -Np1 -i ../gcc-2.95.3-2.patch &&
mkdir ../gcc-build &&
cd ../gcc-build &&
../gcc-2.95.3/configure --prefix=/usr --enable-shared \
   --enable-languages=c,c++ --enable-threads=posix &&
make bootstrap &&
make install
```

Contents

The GCC package contains compilers, preprocessors and the GNU C++ Library.

Description

Compiler

A compiler translates source code in text format to a format that a computer understands. After a source code file is compiled into an object file, a linker will create an executable file from one or more of these compiler generated object files.

Preprocessor

A preprocessor pre–processes a source file, such as including the contents of header files into the source file. It's a good idea to not do this manually to save a lot of time. Someone just inserts a line like #include <filename>. The preprocessor inserts the contents of that file into the source file. That's one of the things a preprocessor does.

C++ Library

The C++ library is used by C++ programs. The C++ library contains functions that are frequently used in C++ programs. This way the programmer doesn't have to write certain functions (such as writing a string of

text to the screen) from scratch every time he creates a program.

Dependencies

GCC−2.95.3 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from th
from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package chmod from the fileutils package cp from the fileutils package ln

Installing Bison–1.28

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  3 MB
```

Installation of Bison

Install Bison by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
   --datadir=/usr/share/bison &&
make &&
make install
```

Some programs don't know about bison and try to find the yacc program (bison is a (better) alternative for yacc). So to please those few programs out there we'll create a yacc script that calls bison and have it emulate yacc's output file name conventions.

Create a new file `/usr/bin/yacc` by running the following:

```
cat > /usr/bin/yacc << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /usr/bin/yacc

exec /usr/bin/bison -y "$@"

# End /usr/bin/yacc
EOF
chmod 755 /usr/bin/yacc
```

Command explanations

`--datadir=/usr/share/bison:` This installs the bison grammar files in /usr/share/bison rather than /usr/share.

Contents

The Bison package contains the bison program.

Description

Bison is a parser generator, a replacement for YACC. YACC stands for Yet Another Compiler Compiler. What is Bison then? It is a program that generates a program that analyzes the structure of a text file. Instead of writing the actual program a user specifies how things should be connected and with those rules a program is constructed that analyzes the text file.

There are a lot of examples where structure is needed and one of them is the calculator.

Given the string :

1 + 2 * 3

A human can easily come to the result 7. Why? Because of the structure. Our brain knows how to interpret the string. The computer doesn't know that and Bison is a tool to help it understand by presenting the string in the following way to the compiler:

+ / \ * 1 / \ 2 3

Starting at the bottom of a tree and coming across the numbers 2 and 3 which are joined by the multiplication symbol, the computer multiplies 2 and 3. The result of that multiplication is remembered and the next thing that the computer sees is the result of 2*3 and the number 1 which are joined by the add symbol. Adding 1 to the previous result makes 7. In calculating the most complex calculations can be broken down in this tree format and the computer just starts at the bottom and works its way up to the top and comes with the correct answer. Of course, Bison isn't only used for calculators alone.

Dependencies

Bison−1.28 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Installing Less−358

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  2 MB
```

Installation of Less

Install Less by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --bindir=/bin &&
make &&
make install
```

Contents

The Less package contains the less program

Description

The less program is a file pager (or text viewer). It displays the contents of a file with the ability to scroll. Less is an improvement on the common pager called "more". Less has the ability to scroll backwards through files as well and it doesn't need to read the entire file when it starts, which makes it faster when reading large files.

Dependencies

Less−358 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package chmod f
from the sh−utils package expr from the sh−utils package uname from the sh−utils package cat from the textutils package t

Installing Groff–1.17.2

```
Estimated build time:           2 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  16 MB
```

Installation of Groff

Install Groff by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install
```

Contents

The Groff packages contains the addftinfo, afmtodit, eqn, grodvi, groff, grog, grohtml, grolj4, grops, grotty, hpftodit, indxbib, lkbib, lookbib, neqn, nroff, pfbtops, pic, psbb, refer, soelim, tbl, tfmtodit and troff programs.

Description

addftinfo

addftinfo reads a troff font file and adds some additional font−metric information that is used by the groff system.

afmtodit

afmtodit creates a font file for use with groff and grops.

eqn

eqn compiles descriptions of equations embedded within troff input files into commands that are understood by troff.

grodvi

grodvi is a driver for groff that produces TeX dvi format.

groff

groff is a front−end to the groff document formatting system. Normally it runs the troff program and a post−processor appropriate for the selected device.

grog

grog reads files and guesses which of the groff options −e, −man, −me, −mm, −ms, −p, −s, and −t are required for printing files, and prints the groff command including those options on the standard output.

grohtml

grohtml translates the output of GNU troff to html

grolj4

grolj4 is a driver for groff that produces output in PCL5 format suitable for an HP Laserjet 4 printer.

grops

grops translates the output of GNU troff to Postscript.

grotty

grotty translates the output of GNU troff into a form suitable for typewriter−like devices.

hpftodit

hpftodit creates a font file for use with groff −Tlj4 from an HP tagged font metric file.

indxbib

indxbib makes an inverted index for the bibliographic databases a specified file for use with refer, lookbib, and lkbib.

lkbib

lkbib searches bibliographic databases for references that contain specified keys and prints any references found on the standard output.

lookbib

lookbib prints a prompt on the standard error (unless the standard input is not a terminal), reads from the standard input a line containing a set of keywords, searches the bibliographic databases in a specified file for references containing those keywords, prints any references found on the standard output, and repeats this process until the end of input.

neqn

The neqn script formats equations for ascii output.

nroff

The nroff script emulates the nroff command using groff.

pfbtops

pfbtops translates a Postscript font in .pfb format to ASCII.

pic

pic compiles descriptions of pictures embedded within troff or TeX input files into commands that are understood by TeX or troff.

psbb

psbb reads a file which should be a Postscript document conforming to the Document Structuring conventions and looks for a %%BoundingBox comment.

refer

refer copies the contents of a file to the standard output, except that lines between .[and .] are interpreted as citations, and lines between .R1 and .R2 are interpreted as commands about how citations are to be processed.

soelim

soelim reads files and replaces lines of the form *.so file* by the contents of *file*.

tbl

tbl compiles descriptions of tables embedded within troff input files into commands that are understood by troff.

tfmtodit

tfmtodit creates a font file for use with **`groff -Tdvi`**

troff

troff is highly compatible with Unix troff. Usually it should be invoked using the groff command, which will also run preprocessors and post−processors in the appropriate order and with the appropriate options.

Dependencies

Groff−1.17.2 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package bison from

Installing Man−1.5j

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  1 MB
```

Installation of Man

Run the following commands to install man:

```
./configure −default &&
make &&
make install
```

You may want to take a look at the man hint at http://hints.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/man.txt which deals with formatting and compression issues for man pages.

Contents

The Man package contains the apropos, makewhatis, man and whatis programs.

Description

apropos

apropos searches a set of database files containing short descriptions of system commands for keywords and displays the result on the standard output.

makewhatis

makewhatis reads all the manual pages contained in given sections of manpath or the pre−formatted pages contained in the given sections of catpath. For each page, it writes a line in the whatis database; each line consists of the name of the page and a short description, separated by a dash. The description is extracted using the content of the NAME section of the manual page.

man

man formats and displays the on−line manual pages.

whatis

whatis searches a set of database files containing short descriptions of system commands for keywords and displays the result on the standard output. Only complete word matches are displayed.

Dependencies

Man−1.5i2 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package bzip2 from the bzip2 package chmod fr
from the fileutils package mkdir from the fileutils package mv from the fileutils package rm from the fileutils package gcc

Installing Perl–5.6.1

```
Estimated build time:           6 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  35 MB
```

Installation of Perl

Install Perl by running the following commands:

```
./Configure -Dprefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install
```

If you don't want to answer all those questions Perl asks, you can add the –d option to the configure script and Perl will use all the default settings. To avoid the Configure script asking questions after the config.sh file has been created you can pass the –e parameter to perl as well. The commands with these parameters included will be:

```
./Configure -Dprefix=/usr -d -e &&
make &&
make install
```

Contents

The Perl package contains Perl – Practical Extraction and Report Language

Description

Perl combines the features and capabilities of C, awk, sed and sh into one powerful programming language.

Dependencies

Perl–5.6.1 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from th

Installing M4–1.4

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  3 MB
```

Installation of M4

Install M4 by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install
```

Contents

The M4 package contains the M4 processor

Description

M4 is a macro processor. It copies input to output expanding macros as it goes. Macros are either built–in or user–defined and can take any number of arguments. Besides just doing macro expansion m4 has built–in functions for including named files, running UNIX commands, doing integer arithmetic, manipulating text in various ways, recursion, etc. M4 can be used either as a front–end to a compiler or as a macro processor in its own right.

Dependencies

M4–1.4 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package chmod fro

Installing Texinfo–4.0

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  10 MB
```

Installation of Texinfo

Install Texinfo by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install &&
make TEXMF=/usr/share/texmf install-tex
```

Command explanations

`make TEXMF=/usr/share/texmf install-tex`: This installs the texinfo components that belong in a TeX installation. Although TeX isn't installed on LFS, it's installed here in case you are going to use TeX. As it's completely optional, feel free to skip it.

Contents

The Texinfo package contains the info, install–info, makeinfo, texi2dvi and texindex programs

Description

info

The info program reads Info documents, usually contained in the /usr/doc/info directory. Info documents are like man(ual) pages, but they tend to be more in depth than just explaining the options to a program.

install–info

The install–info program updates the info entries. When the info program is run a list with available topics (ie: available info documents) will be presented. The install–info program is used to maintain this list of available topics. If info files are removed manually, it is also necessary to delete the topic in the index file as well. This program is used for that. It also works the other way around when info documents are added.

makeinfo

The makeinfo program translates Texinfo source documents into various formats. Available formats are: info files, plain text and HTML.

texi2dvi

The texi2dvi program prints Texinfo documents

texindex

The texindex program is used to sort Texinfo index files.

Dependencies

Texinfo−4.0 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Installing Autoconf−2.52

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  4 MB
```

Installation of Autoconf

Autoconf−2.52 is known to be too new for some applications. KDE−CVS is mostly reported not to work well with this automake release and downgrading to version 2.13 is recommended if you start experiencing any problems with this release.

Install Autoconf by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install
```

Contents

The Autoconf package contains the autoconf, autoheader, autoreconf, autoscan, autoupdate and ifnames programs

Description

autoconf

Autoconf is a tool for producing shell scripts that automatically configure software source code packages to adapt to many kinds of UNIX−like systems. The configuration scripts produced by Autoconf are independent of Autoconf when they are run, so their users do not need to have Autoconf.

autoheader

The autoheader program can create a template file of C #define statements for configure to use

autoreconf

If there are a lot of Autoconf−generated configure scripts, the autoreconf program can save some work. It runs autoconf (and autoheader, where appropriate) repeatedly to remake the Autoconf configure scripts and configuration header templates in the directory tree rooted at the current directory.

autoscan

The autoscan program can help to create a configure.in file for a software package. autoscan examines source files in the directory tree rooted at a directory given as a command line argument, or the current directory if none is given. It searches the source files for common portability problems and creates a file configure.scan which is a preliminary configure.in for that package.

autoupdate

The autoupdate program updates a configure.in file that calls Autoconf macros by their old names to use the current macro names.

ifnames

ifnames can help when writing a configure.in for a software package. It prints the identifiers that the package already uses in C preprocessor conditionals. If a package has already been set up to have some portability, this program can help to figure out what its configure needs to check for. It may help fill in some gaps in a configure.in generated by autoscan.

Dependencies

Autoconf−2.52 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package cmp from the diffutils package chmod from the fileutils package cp from the fileutils package ls

Installing Automake–1.5

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  3 MB
```

Installation of Automake

Automake–1.5 is known to be too new for some applications. KDE–CVS is mostly reported not to work well with this automake release and downgrading to version 1.4–p5 is recommended if you start experiencing any problems with this release.

Install Automake by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make install
```

Contents

The Automake package contains the aclocal and automake programs

Description

aclocal

Automake includes a number of Autoconf macros which can be used in packages; some of them are actually required by Automake in certain situations. These macros must be defined in the aclocal.m4–file; otherwise they will not be seen by autoconf.

The aclocal program will automatically generate aclocal.m4 files based on the contents of configure.in. This provides a convenient way to get Automake–provided macros, without having to search around. Also, the aclocal mechanism is extensible for use by other packages.

automake

To create all the Makefile.in's for a package, run the automake program in the top level directory, with no arguments. automake will automatically find each appropriate Makefile.am (by scanning configure.in) and generate the corresponding Makefile.in.

Dependencies

Automake–1.5 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package cmp from the diffutils package chmod from the fileutils package cp from the fileutils package ls

Installing Bash–2.05a

```
Estimated build time:           3 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  19 MB
```

Installation of Bash

Install Bash by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --with-curses \
   --bindir=/bin &&
make &&
make install &&
exec /bin/bash --login
```

Contents

The Bash package contains the bash program

Description

Bash is the Bourne–Again SHell, which is a widely used command interpreter on Unix systems. Bash is a program that reads from standard input, the keyboard. A user types something and the program will evaluate what he has typed and do something with it, like running a program.

Dependencies

Bash–2.05 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package size from t

Installing Flex–2.5.4a

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  3MB
```

Installation of Flex

Install Flex by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install
```

Some programs don't know about flex and try to find the lex program (flex is a (better) alternative for lex). So to please those few programs out there we'll create a lex script that calls flex and have it emulate lex.

Create a new file `/usr/bin/lex` by running the following:

```
cat > /usr/bin/lex << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /usr/bin/lex

exec /usr/bin/flex -l "$@"

# End /usr/bin/lex
EOF
chmod 755 /usr/bin/lex
```

Contents

The Flex package contains the flex program

Description

Flex is a tool for generating programs which recognize patterns in text. Pattern recognition is very useful in many applications. A user sets up rules what to look for and flex will make a program that looks for those patterns. The reason people use flex is that it is much easier to sets up rules for what to look for than to write the actual program that finds the text.

Dependencies

Flex−2.5.4a needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package bison from from the sh−utils package cat from the textutils package tr from the textutils package

Installing File–3.36

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  2 MB
```

Installation of File

Install File by running the following commands:

```
cp readelf.h readelf.h.backup &&
sed $'/#define __/a \\\n#include <stdint.h>' readelf.h.backup > readelf.h &&
./configure --prefix=/usr --datadir=/usr/share/misc &&
make &&
make install
```

File uses magic numbers to determine a file type. These magic numbers come with File in a plain text file. File internally compiles this database each time it is run. This is not the normal type of operation for File since compiling a plain text file each time is not the fastest way to do it. File offers an option "–C" to compile this magic number file. The reason this isn't done automatically is that some people like to work on the magic numbers. On the other hand many people didn't get it that they should compile the magic numbers, so the author of File added a warning when the plain text magic file is used. As we usually won't work on the plain text magic file, we compile this file, because it's faster, fixes that annoying warning and is how it was meant to be:

```
file -C
```

Command explanations

sed $'/#define __/a \\\n#include <stdint.h>' readelf.h.backup > readelf.h : This sed fixes an error which occurs when compiling file–3.36 with automake–1.5 installed.

Contents

The File package contains the file program.

Description

File tests each specified file in an attempt to classify it. There are three sets of tests, performed in this order: filesystem tests, magic number tests, and language tests. The first test that succeeds causes the file type to be printed.

Dependencies

File–3.36 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package chmod f

Installing Libtool–1.4.2

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  5 MB
```

Installation of Libtool

Install Libtool by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install
```

Contents

The Libtool package contains the libtool and libtoolize programs. It also contains the ltdl library.

Description

libtool

Libtool provides generalized library−building support services.

libtoolize

libtoolize provides a standard way to add libtool support to a package.

ltdl library

Libtool provides a small library, called `libltdl', that aims at hiding the various difficulties of dlopening libraries from programmers.

Dependencies

Libtool−1.4 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Installing Bin86–0.16.0

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  1 MB
```

Installation of Bin86

This package is only needed if you decide to use Lilo on your LFS system. If you're going to use something else like Grub you won't need bin86. Check the documentation for your favorite boot loader to see if you need the bin86 package (usually only ld86 and/or as86 from this package are required).

Keep in mind, though, that it's not just boot loaders that use the bin86 package. There is always the chance that some other package needs programs from this package, so keep that in mind if you decide to skip this.

Install Bin86 by running the following commands:

```
make &&
make PREFIX=/usr install
```

Contents

The Bin86 contains the as86, as86_encap, ld86, objdump86, nm86 and size86 programs.

Description

as86

as86 is an assembler for the 8086...80386 processors.

as86_encap

as86_encap is a shell script to call as86 and convert the created binary into a C file prog.v to be included in or linked with programs like boot block installers.

ld86

ld86 understands only the object files produced by the as86 assembler, it can link them into either an impure or a separate I&D executable.

objdump86

No description available.

nm86

No description available.

size86

No description available.

Dependencies

Bin86−0.16.0 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package strip from the binutils package chmod f
from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package mv from the fileutils package cc from the gcc package make from th

Installing Binutils–2.11.2

```
Estimated build time:           6 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  85 MB
```

Installation of Binutils

This package is known to behave badly when you have changed its default optimization flags (including the −march and −mcpu options). Binutils is best left alone, so we recommend you unsetting CFLAGS, CXXFLAGS and other such variables/settings that would change the default optimization that it comes with.

Install Binutils by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-shared &&
make tooldir=/usr &&
make tooldir=/usr install &&
make tooldir=/usr install-info
```

Command explanations

`make tooldir=/usr install-info`: This will install binutil's info pages.

Contents

The Binutils package contains the addr2line, as, ar, c++filt, gasp, gprof, ld, nm, objcopy, objdump, ranlib, readelf, size, strings and strip programs

Description

addr2line

addr2line translates program addresses into file names and line numbers. Given an address and an executable, it uses the debugging information in the executable to figure out which file name and line number are associated with a given address.

as

as is primarily intended to assemble the output of the GNU C compiler gcc for use by the linker ld.

ar

The ar program creates, modifies, and extracts from archives. An archive is a single file holding a collection of other files in a structure that makes it possible to retrieve the original individual files (called members of the archive).

c++filt

The C++ language provides function overloading, which means that it is possible to write many functions with the same name (providing each takes parameters of different types). All C++ function names are encoded into a low−level assembly label (this process is known as mangling). The c++filt program does the inverse mapping: it decodes (demangles) low−level names into user−level names so that the linker can keep these overloaded functions from clashing.

gasp

Gasp is the Assembler Macro Preprocessor.

gprof

gprof displays call graph profile data.

ld

ld combines a number of object and archive files, relocates their data and ties up symbol references. Often the last step in building a new compiled program to run is a call to ld.

nm

nm lists the symbols from object files.

objcopy

objcopy utility copies the contents of an object file to another. objcopy uses the GNU BFD Library to read and write the object files. It can write the destination object file in a format different from that of the source object file.

objdump

objdump displays information about one or more object files. The options control what particular information to display. This information is mostly useful to programmers who are working on the compilation tools, as opposed to programmers who just want their program to compile and work.

ranlib

ranlib generates an index to the contents of an archive, and stores it in the archive. The index lists each symbol defined by a member of an archive that is a relocatable object file.

readelf

readelf displays information about elf type binaries.

size

size lists the section sizes −−and the total size−− for each of the object files objfile in its argument list. By default, one line of output is generated for each object file or each module in an archive.

strings

For each file given, strings prints the printable character sequences that are at least 4 characters long (or the number specified with an option to the program) and are followed by an unprintable character. By default, it only prints the strings from the initialized and loaded sections of object files; for other types of files, it prints the strings from the whole file.

strings is mainly useful for determining the contents of non−text files.

strip

strip discards all or specific symbols from object files. The list of object files may include archives. At least one object file must be given. strip modifies the files named in its argument, rather than writing modified copies under different names.

Dependencies

Binutils−2.11.2 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from th

Installing Bzip2–1.0.1

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  2 MB
```

Installation of Bzip2

Install Bzip2 by running the following commands:

```
make -f Makefile-libbz2_so &&
make bzip2recover libbz2.a &&
ln -s libbz2.so.1.0.1 libbz2.so &&
cp bzip2-shared /bin/bzip2 &&
cp bzip2recover /bin &&
cp bzip2.1 /usr/share/man/man1 &&
cp bzlib.h /usr/include &&
cp -a libbz2.so* /lib &&
rm /usr/lib/libbz2.a &&
cp libbz2.a /usr/lib &&
cd /usr/lib &&
ln -sf ../../lib/libbz2.so &&
cd /bin &&
ln -sf bzip2 bunzip2 &&
ln -sf bzip2 bzcat &&
cd /usr/share/man/man1 &&
ln -sf bzip2.1 bunzip2.1 &&
ln -sf bzip2.1 bzcat.1 &&
ln -sf bzip2.1 bzip2recover.1
```

Although it's not strictly a part of a basic LFS system it's worth mentioning that a patch for Tar can be downloaded which enables the tar program to compress and uncompress using bzip2/bunzip2 easily. With a plain tar, you have to use constructions like bzcat file.tar.bz|tar xv or tar --use-compress-prog=bunzip2 -xvf file.tar.bz2 to use bzip2 and bunzip2 with tar. This patch provides the -j option so you can unpack a Bzip2 archive with tar xvfj file.tar.bz2. Applying this patch will be mentioned later on when the Tar package is re-installed.

Command explanations

`make -f Makefile-libbz2_so:` This will cause bzip2 to be built using a different Makefile file, in this case the Makefile-libbz2_so file which creates a dynamic libbz2.so library and links the bzip2 utilities against it.

The reason we don't use **`make install`** is that bzip2's make install doesn't install the shared libbz2.so, nor the bzip2 binary that's linked against that library. So we have no choice but to manually install the files.

Contents

The Bzip2 packages contains the bunzip2, bzcat, bzip2 and bzip2recover programs.

Description

bunzip2

Bunzip2 decompresses files that are compressed with bzip2.

bzcat

bzcat (or bzip2 −dc) decompresses all specified files to the standard output.

bzip2

bzip2 compresses files using the Burrows−Wheeler block sorting text compression algorithm, and Huffman coding. Compression is generally considerably better than that achieved by more conventional LZ77/LZ78−based compressors, and approaches the performance of the PPM family of statistical compressors.

bzip2recover

bzip2recover recovers data from damaged bzip2 files.

Dependencies

Bzip2−1.0.1 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cp from th

Installing Ed–0.2

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  2 MB
```

Installation of Ed

Ed is an optional package. The only program on a normal LFS system that uses ed is patch. But these days, ed patch files are quite rare in favour of the diff format patch files. So, if you personally have no need to use ed, you can skip it.

Install Ed by running the following commands:

```
cp buf.c buf.c.backup &&
sed 's/int u/int u, sfd/' buf.c.backup | \
   sed '/.*\*mktemp.*/d' | \
   sed 's/.*if (mktemp.*/  sfd = mkstemp(sfn);\
   if ((sfd == -1) || (sfp = fopen (sfn, "w+")) == NULL)/' > buf.c &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install &&
mv /usr/bin/ed /usr/bin/red /bin
```

Command explanations

The sed commands fix a symlink vulnerability in ed. The ed executable creates files in /tmp with predictable names. By using various symlink attacks, it is possible to have ed write to files it should not, change the permissions of various files, etc.

Contents

The Ed package contains the ed program.

Description

Ed is a line−oriented text editor. It is used to create, display, modify and otherwise manipulate text files.

Dependencies

Ed−0.2 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package chmod fro

Installing Gettext–0.10.40

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  11MB
```

Installation of Gettext

Install Gettext by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install
```

Contents

The gettext package contains the gettext, gettextize, msgcmp, msgcomm, msgfmt, msgmerge, msgunfmt and xgettext programs.

Description

gettext

The gettext package is used for internationalization (also known as i18n) and for localization (also known as l10n). Programs can be compiled with Native Language Support (NLS) which enable them to output messages in the users native language rather than in the default English language.

gettextize

No description is currently available for this program.

msgcmp

No description is currently available for this program.

msgcomm

No description is currently available for this program.

msgfmt

No description is currently available for this program.

msgmerge

No description is currently available for this program.

msgunfmt

No description is currently available for this program.

xgettext

No description is currently available for this program.

Dependencies

Gettext−0.10.39 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from th

Installing Kbd−1.06

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  8 MB
```

Installation of Kbd

Install Kbd by running the following commands:

```
./configure &&
make &&
make install
```

When using the loadkeys program from this package, don't use the −d option to load a default keymap file. It won't work properly with keymaps that include other keymaps.

Contents

The Kbd package contains the chvt, deallocvt, dumpkeys, fgconsole, getkeycodes, kbd_mode, kbdrate, loadkeys, loadunimap, mapscrn, psfxtable, resizecons, screendump, setfont, setkeycodes, setleds, setmetamode, setvesablank, showfont, showkey, unicode_start, and unicode_stop programs. There are some other programs that don't get installed by default, as they are very optional. Take a look at the Kbd package contents if you have trouble with your console.

Description

chvt

chvt changes foreground virtual terminal.

deallocvt

deallocvt deallocates unused virtual terminals.

dumpkeys

dumpkeys dumps keyboard translation tables.

fgconsole

fgconsole prints the number of the active virtual terminal.

getkeycodes

getkeycodes prints the kernel scancode−to−keycode mapping table.

kbd_mode

kbd_mode reports or sets the keyboard mode.

kbdrate

kbdrate sets the keyboard repeat and delay rates.

loadkeys

loadkeys loads keyboard translation tables.

loadunimap

loadunimap loads the kernel unicode−to−font mapping table.

mapscrn

mapscrn loads a user defined output character mapping table into the console driver. Note that it is obsolete and that its features are built into setfont.

psfxtable

psfxtable is a tool for handling Unicode character tables for console fonts.

resizecons

resizecons changes the kernel idea of the console size.

screendump

A screen shot utility for the console.

setfont

This lets you change the EGA/VGA fonts in console.

setkeycodes

setkeycodes loads kernel scancode−to−keycode mapping table entries.

setleds

setleds sets the keyboard LEDs. Many people find it useful to have numlock enabled by default, and it is by using this program that you can achieve this.

setmetamode

setmetamode defines the keyboard meta key handling.

setvesablank

This lets you fiddle with the built−in hardware screensaver (not toasters, only a blank screen).

showfont

showfont displays data about a font. The information shown includes font information, font properties, character metrics, and character bitmaps.

showkey

showkey examines the scancodes and keycodes sent by the keyboard.

unicode_start

unicode_start puts the console in Unicode mode.

unicode_stop

unicode_stop reverts keyboard and console from unicode mode.

Dependencies

Kbd−1.06 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package strip from the binutils package bison fr
from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package mv from the fileutils package rm from the fileutils package flex fro

Installing Diffutils–2.7

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  2 MB
```

Installation of Diffutils

Install Diffutils by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install
```

Contents

The Diffutils package contains the cmp, diff, diff3 and sdiff programs.

Description

cmp and diff

cmp and diff both compare two files and report their differences. Both programs have extra options which compare files in different situations.

diff3

The difference between diff and diff3 is that diff compares 2 files, diff3 compares 3 files.

sdiff

sdiff merges two files and interactively outputs the results.

Dependencies

Diffutils–2.7 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ld from the binutils package as from the binutils package chmod from the fileutils package cp fro

Installing E2fsprogs–1.25

```
Estimated build time:           2 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  21 MB
```

Installation of E2fsprogs

Install E2fsprogs by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --with-root-prefix="" \
   --enable-elf-shlibs &&
make &&
make install &&
make install-libs
```

Command explanations

`--with-root-prefix="":` The reason for supplying this option is because of the setup of the e2fsprogs Makefile. Some programs are essential for system use when, for example, /usr isn't mounted (like the e2fsck program). These programs and libraries therefore belong in directories like /lib and /sbin. If this option isn't passed to e2fsprogs' configure, it places these programs in /usr which is not what we want.

`--enable-elf-shlibs:` This creates shared libraries that some programs in this package can make use of.

`make install-libs:` This installs the shared libraries that are built.

Contents

The e2fsprogs package contains the badblocks, chattr, debugfs, dumpe2fs, e2fsck, e2label, fsck, fsck.ext2, lsattr, mke2fs, mkfs.ext2, mklost+found, tune2fs and uuidgen programs.

Description

badblocks

badblocks is used to search for bad blocks on a device (usually a disk partition).

chattr

chattr changes the file attributes on a Linux second extended file system.

debugfs

The debugfs program is a file system debugger. It can be used to examine and change the state of an ext2 file system.

dumpe2fs

dumpe2fs prints the super block and blocks group information for the filesystem present on a specified device.

e2fsck and fsck.ext2

e2fsck is used to check a Linux second extended file system. fsck.ext2 does the same as e2fsck.

e2label

e2label will display or change the filesystem label on the ext2 filesystem located on the specified device.

fsck

fsck is used to check and optionally repair a Linux file system.

lsattr

lsattr lists the file attributes on a second extended file system.

mke2fs and mkfs.ext2

mke2fs is used to create a Linux second extended file system on a device (usually a disk partition). mkfs.ext2 does the same as mke2fs.

mklost+found

mklost+found is used to create a lost+found directory in the current working directory on a Linux second extended file system. mklost+found pre−allocates disk blocks to the directory to make it usable by e2fsck.

tune2fs

tune2fs adjusts tunable filesystem parameters on a Linux second extended filesystem.

uuidgen

The uuidgen program creates a new universally unique identifier (UUID) using the libuuid library. The new UUID can reasonably be considered unique among all UUIDs created on the local system, and among UUIDs created on other systems in the past and in the future.

Dependencies

E2fsprogs−1.22 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Installing Fileutils–4.1

```
Estimated build time:           3 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  16 MB
```

Installation of Fileutils

Install Fileutils by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --bindir=/bin \
   --libexecdir=/bin &&
make &&
make install
```

Contents

The Fileutils package contains the chgrp, chmod, chown, cp, dd, df, dir, dircolors, du, install, ln, ls, mkdir, mkfifo, mknod, mv, rm, rmdir, shred, sync, touch and vdir programs.

Description

chgrp

chgrp changes the group ownership of each given file to the named group, which can be either a group name or a numeric group ID.

chmod

chmod changes the permissions of each given file according to mode, which can be either a symbolic representation of changes to make, or an octal number representing the bit pattern for the new permissions.

chown

chown changes the user and/or group ownership of each given file.

cp

cp copies files from one place to another.

dd

dd copies a file (from the standard input to the standard output, by default) with a user−selectable blocksize, while optionally performing conversions on it.

df

df displays the amount of disk space available on the filesystem containing each file name argument. If no file name is given, the space available on all currently mounted filesystems is shown.

dir, ls and vdir

dir and vdir are versions of ls with different default output formats. These programs list each given file or directory name. Directory contents are sorted alphabetically. For ls, files are by default listed in columns, sorted vertically, if the standard output is a terminal; otherwise they are listed one per line. For dir, files are by default listed in columns, sorted vertically. For vdir, files are by default listed in long format.

dircolors

dircolors outputs commands to set the LS_COLOR environment variable. The LS_COLOR variable is use to change the default color scheme used by ls and related utilities.

du

du displays the amount of disk space used by each argument and for each subdirectory of directory arguments.

install

install copies files and sets their permission modes and, if possible, their owner and group.

ln

ln makes hard or soft (symbolic) links between files.

mkdir

mkdir creates directories with a given name.

mkfifo

mkfifo creates a FIFO with each given name.

mknod

mknod creates a FIFO, character special file, or block special file with the given file name.

mv

mv moves files from one directory to another or renames files, depending on the arguments given to mv.

rm

rm removes files or directories.

rmdir

rmdir removes directories, if they are empty.

shred

shred deletes a file securely, overwriting it first so that its contents can't be recovered.

sync

sync forces changed blocks to disk and updates the super block.

touch

touch changes the access and modification times of each given file to the current time. Files that do not exist are created empty.

Dependencies

Fileutils−4.1 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from
from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package ls from the fileutils package mkdir from the fileutils package mv fro

Installing Grep–2.4.2

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  3 MB
```

Installation of Grep

Install Grep by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install
```

Contents

The grep package contains the egrep, fgrep and grep programs.

Description

egrep

egrep prints lines from files matching an extended regular expression pattern.

fgrep

fgrep prints lines from files matching a list of fixed strings, separated by newlines, any of which is to be matched.

grep

grep prints lines from files matching a basic regular expression pattern.

Dependencies

Grep–2.4.2 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Installing Gzip–1.2.4a

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  1 MB
```

Installation of Gzip

Install Gzip by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install &&
cd /usr/bin &&
mv gzip /bin &&
rm gunzip zcat &&
cd /bin &&
ln -sf gzip gunzip &&
ln -sf gzip zcat &&
ln -sf gzip compress &&
ln -sf gunzip uncompress
```

Contents

The Gzip package contains the compress, gunzip, gzexe, gzip, uncompress, zcat, zcmp, zdiff, zforce, zgrep, zmore and znew programs.

Description

gunzip, uncompress

gunzip and uncompress decompress files which are compressed with gzip.

gzexe

gzexe allows you to compress executables in place and have them automatically uncompress and execute when they are run (at a penalty in performance).

gzip

gzip reduces the size of the named files using Lempel–Ziv coding (LZ77).

zcat

zcat uncompresses either a list of files on the command line or its standard input and writes the uncompressed data on standard output

zcmp

zcmp invokes the cmp program on compressed files.

zdiff

zdiff invokes the diff program on compressed files.

zforce

zforce forces a .gz extension on all gzip files so that gzip will not compress them twice. This can be useful for files with names truncated after a file transfer.

zgrep

zgrep invokes the grep program on compressed files.

zmore

zmore is a filter which allows examination of compressed or plain text files one screen at a time on a soft−copy terminal (similar to the more program).

znew

znew re−compresses files from .Z (compress) format to .gz (gzip) format.

Dependencies

Gzip−1.2.4a needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from the binutils package chmod fr

Installing Lilo–22.1

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  3 MB
```

Installation of Lilo

We have chosen Lilo because we feel comfortable with it, but you may wish to take a look elsewhere. Someone has written a hint on GRUB at http://hints.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/grub–howto.txt, an alternative boot loader.

Install Lilo by running the following commands:

```
make &&
make install
```

It appears that compilation of this package fails on certain machines when the –g compiler flag is being used. If you can't compile Lilo at all, you should try to remove the –g value from the CFLAGS variable in the `Makefile` file.

At the end of the installation the make install process will print a message stating that /sbin/lilo has to be executed to complete the update. Don't do this as it has no use. The /etc/lilo.conf isn't present yet. We will complete the installation of lilo in chapter 8.

Maybe you'll be interested to know that someone wrote a hint on how to get a logo instead the the standard LILO prompt or menu. Take a look at it at http://hints.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/bootlogo.txt .

Contents

The Lilo package contains the lilo program.

Description

lilo installs the Linux boot loader which is used to start a Linux system.

Dependencies

Lilo–21.7.5 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as86 from the bin86 package ld86 from the bin86 package as from the binutils package ld from t

Installing Make–3.79.1

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  6 MB
```

Installation of Make

Install Make by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install
```

Contents

The Make package contains the make program.

Description

make determines automatically which pieces of a large program need to be recompiled, and issues the commands to recompile them.

Dependencies

Make–3.79.1 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package chgrp fr

Installing Modutils–2.4.12

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  2 MB
```

Installation of Modutils

Install Modutils by running the following commands:

```
./configure &&
make &&
make install
```

Contents

The Modutils package contains the depmod, genksyms, insmod, insmod_ksymoops_clean, kerneld, kernelversion, ksyms, lsmod, modinfo, modprobe and rmmod programs.

Description

depmod

depmod handles dependency descriptions for loadable kernel modules.

genksyms

genksyms reads (on standard input) the output from gcc –E source.c and generates a file containing version information.

insmod

insmod installs a loadable module in the running kernel.

insmod_ksymoops_clean

insmod_ksymoops_clean deletes saved ksyms and modules not accessed in 2 days.

kerneld

kerneld performs kernel action in user space (such as on–demand loading of modules)

kernelversion

kernelversion reports the major version of the running kernel.

ksyms

ksyms displays exported kernel symbols.

lsmod

lsmod shows information about all loaded modules.

modinfo

modinfo examines an object file associated with a kernel module and displays any information that it can glean.

modprobe

Modprobe uses a Makefile−like dependency file, created by depmod, to automatically load the relevant module(s) from the set of modules available in predefined directory trees.

rmmod

rmmod unloads loadable modules from the running kernel.

Dependencies

Modutils−2.4.7 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package strip from from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package mkdir from the fileutils package mv from the fileutils package rm fi

Installing Netkit−base−0.17

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  1 MB
```

Installation of Netkit−base

Install Netkit−base by running the following commands:

```
./configure &&
make &&
make install &&
cd etc.sample &&
cp services protocols /etc
```

There are other files in the `etc.sample` directory which might be of interest to you.

Contents

The Netkit−base package contains the inetd and ping programs.

Description

inetd

inetd is the mother of all daemons. It listens for connections, and transfers the call to the appropriate daemon.

ping

ping sends ICMP ECHO_REQUEST packets to a host and determines its response time.

Dependencies

Netkit−base−0.17 needs the following to be installed:

sh rom the bash package as rom the binutils package ld rom the binutils package strip rom the binutils package cp rom the
from the fileutils package rm rom the fileutils package make rom the make package cc rom the gcc package sed rom the se

Installing Patch–2.5.4

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  2 MB
```

Installation of Patch

Install Patch by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install
```

Contents

The Patch package contains the patch program.

Description

The patch program modifies a file according to a patch file. A patch file usually is a list created by the diff program that contains instructions on how an original file needs to be modified. Patch is used a lot for source code patches since it saves time and space. Imagine a package that is 1MB in size. The next version of that package only has changes in two files of the first version. It can be shipped as an entirely new package of 1MB or just as a patch file of 1KB which will update the first version to make it identical to the second version. So if the first version was downloaded already, a patch file avoids a second large download.

Dependencies

Patch–2.5.4 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package chmod f

Installing Procinfo–18

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  170 KB
```

Installation of Procinfo

Install Procinfo by running the following commands:

```
make LDLIBS=-lncurses &&
make install
```

Command explanations

`make LDLIBS=-lncurses :` This will use –lncurses instead of –ltermcap when building procinfo. This is done because libtermcap is declared obsolete in favor of libncurses.

Contents

The Procinfo package contains the procinfo program.

Description

procinfo gathers some system data from the /proc directory and prints it nicely formatted on the standard output device.

Dependencies

Procinfo–18 needs the following to be installed:

as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package install
from the fileutils package mkdir from the fileutils package make from the make package sed from the sed package

Installing Procps–2.0.7

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  2 MB
```

Installation of Procps

Install Procps by running the following commands:

```
make &&
make XSCPT='' install &&
mv /usr/bin/kill /bin
```

Command explanations

`make XSCPT='' install:` This will set the Makefile variable XSCPT to an empty value so that the XConsole installation is disabled. Otherwise "Make install" tries to copy the file XConsole to /usr/X11R6/lib/app–defaults. And that directory does not exist, because X is not installed.

Contents

The Procps package contains the free, kill, oldps, ps, skill, snice, sysctl, tload, top, uptime, vmstat, w and watch programs.

Description

free

free displays the total amount of free and used physical and swap memory in the system, as well as the shared memory and buffers used by the kernel.

kill

kills sends signals to processes.

oldps and ps

ps gives a snapshot of the current processes.

skill

skill sends signals to process matching a criteria.

snice

snice changes the scheduling priority for process matching a criteria.

sysctl

sysctl modifies kernel parameters at runtime.

tload

tload prints a graph of the current system load average to the specified tty (or the tty of the tload process if none is specified).

top

top provides an ongoing look at processor activity in real time.

uptime

uptime gives a one line display of the following information: the current time, how long the system has been running, how many users are currently logged on, and the system load averages for the past 1, 5, and 15 minutes.

vmstat

vmstat reports information about processes, memory, paging, block IO, traps, and cpu activity.

w

w displays information about the users currently on the machine, and their processes.

watch

watch runs command repeatedly, displaying its output (the first screen full).

Dependencies

Procps−2.0.7 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package strip from the binutils package install from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package mv from the fileutils package rm from the fileutils package gcc from

Installing Psmisc–20.1

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  500 KB
```

Installation of Psmisc

Install Psmisc by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --exec-prefix=/ &&
make &&
make install
```

psmisc installs the `/usr/share/man/man1/pidof.1` man page, but psmisc's pidof program isn't installed by default. Generally that isn't a problem because we install the sysvinit package later on which provides us with a better pidof program.

It's up to you now to decide if you are going to use the sysvinit package which provides a pidof program, or not. If you are going to, you should remove psmisc's pidof man page by running:

```
rm /usr/share/man/man1/pidof.1
```

If you're not going to use sysvinit, you should complete this package's installation by creating the `/bin/pidof` symlink by running:

```
cd /bin
ln -s killall pidof
```

Command explanations

`--exec-prefix=/`: This will cause the programs to be installed in `/bin` rather than in `/usr/bin`. The programs in this package are often used in bootscripts, so they should be in the `/bin` directory so they can be used when the `/usr` partition isn't mounted yet.

Contents

The Psmisc package contains the fuser, killall, pidof and pstree programs.

Description

fuser

fuser displays the PIDs of processes using the specified files or file systems.

killall

killall sends a signal to all processes running any of the specified commands.

pidof

Pidof finds the process id's (pids) of the named programs and prints those id's on standard output.

pstree

pstree shows running processes as a tree.

Dependencies

Psmisc−20.1 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package chmod f

Installing Reiserfsprogs–3.x.0j

```
Estimated build time:           TBD
Estimated required disk space:  TBD
```

Installation of Reiserfsprogs

Reiserfsprogs only needs to be installed if you intend on using the reiserfs filesystem. Install Reiserfsprogs by running the following commands:

```
./configure --mandir=/usr/share/man &&
make &&
make install
```

Command explanations

`--mandir=/usr/share/man:` This ensures that the manual pages are installed in the correct location while still installing the programs in `/sbin` as they should be.

Contents

The reiserfsprogs package contains the debugreiserfs, mkreiserfs, reiserfsck, resize_reiserfs and unpack programs.

Description

debugreiserfs

debugreiserfs can sometimes help to solve problems with reiserfs filesystems. If it is called without options it prints the super block of any reiserfs filesystem found on the device.

mkreiserfs

mkreiserfs creates a reiserfs file system.

reiserfsck

reiserfsck checks a reiserfs file system.

resize_reiserfs

resize_reiserfs is used to resize an unmounted reiserfs file system

unpack

No description is currently available for unpack.

Dependencies

Reiserfs−N/A needs the following to be installed:

TO BE DETERMINED

Installing Sed–3.02

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  2 MB
```

Installation of Sed

Install Sed by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --bindir=/bin &&
make &&
make install
```

Contents

The Sed package contains the sed program.

Description

sed is a stream editor. A stream editor is used to perform basic text transformations on an input stream (a file or input from a pipeline).

Dependencies

Sed–3.02 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Installing Sh–utils–2.0

```
Estimated build time:           2 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  11 MB
```

Installation of Sh–utils

Install Shellutils by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install &&
cd /usr/bin &&
mv date echo false pwd stty /bin &&
mv su true uname hostname /bin &&
mv chroot ../sbin
```

FHS compliance notes

There is a command installed in this package which is named test. It is often used in shell scripts to evaluate conditions, but is more often encountered in the form of **[condition]**. These brackets are built into the bash interpreter, but the FHS dictates that there should be a `[` binary. We create that in this way, while still in the `/usr/bin` directory:

```
ln -sf test [
```

Contents

The Sh–utils package contains the basename, chroot, date, dirname, echo, env, expr, factor, false, groups, hostid, hostname, id, logname, nice, nohup, pathchk, pinky, printenv, printf, pwd, seq, sleep, stty, su, tee, test, true, tty, uname, uptime, users, who, whoami and yes programs.

Description

basename

basename strips directory and suffixes from filenames.

chroot

chroot runs a command or interactive shell with special root directory.

date

date displays the current time in a specified format, or sets the system date.

dirname

dirname strips non−directory suffixes from file name.

echo

echo displays a line of text.

env

env runs a program in a modified environment.

expr

expr evaluates expressions.

factor

factor prints the prime factors of all specified integer numbers.

false

false always exits with a status code indicating failure.

groups

groups prints the groups a user is in.

hostid

hostid prints the numeric identifier (in hexadecimal) for the current host.

hostname

hostname sets or prints the name of the current host system

id

id prints the real and effective UIDs and GIDs of a user or the current user.

logname

logname prints the current user's login name.

nice

nice runs a program with modified scheduling priority.

nohup

nohup runs a command immune to hangups, with output to a non−tty

pathchk

pathchk checks whether file names are valid or portable.

pinky

pinky is a lightweight finger utility which retrieves information about a certain user

printenv

printenv prints all or part of the environment.

printf

printf formats and prints data (the same as the printf C function).

pwd

pwd prints the name of the current/working directory

seq

seq prints numbers in a certain range with a certain increment.

sleep

sleep delays for a specified amount of time.

stty

stty changes and prints terminal line settings.

su

su runs a shell with substitute user and group IDs

tee

tee reads from standard input and writes to standard output and files.

test

test checks file types and compares values.

true

True always exits with a status code indicating success.

tty

tty prints the file name of the terminal connected to standard input.

uname

uname prints system information.

uptime

uptime tells how long the system has been running.

users

users prints the user names of users currently logged in to the current host.

who

who shows who is logged on.

whoami

whoami prints the user's effective userid.

yes

yes outputs a string repeatedly until killed.

Dependencies

Sh−utils−2.0 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Installing Net−tools−1.60

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  5 MB
```

Installation of Net−tools

Install Net−tools by running the following commands:

```
make &&
make update
```

Command explanations

`make update:` This does the same as a **`make install`** with the exception that make update doesn't make backups of files it's replacing. One of the things net−tools replaces is sh−utils's version of `/bin/hostname` (net−tools's version is far better than sh−utils's version).

Also, if you decide to reinstall this package at some point in the future, a **`make update`** won't backup all the files from a previous net−tools installation.

Contents

The Net−tools package contains the arp, hostname, ifconfig, netstat, plipconfig, rarp, route, and slattach programs.

Description

arp

arp is used to manipulate the kernel's ARP cache, usually to add or delete an entry, or to dump the ARP cache.

hostname

hostname, with its symlinks domainname, dnsdomainname, nisdomainname, ypdomainname, and nodename, is used to set or show the system's hostname (or other, depending on the symlink used).

ifconfig

The ifconfig command is the general command used to configure network interfaces.

netstat

netstat is a multi−purpose tool used to print the network connections, routing tables, interface statistics, masquerade connections, and multicast memberships.

plipconfig

plipconfig is used to fine−tune the PLIP device parameters, hopefully making it faster.

rarp

Akin to the arp program, the rarp program manipulates the system's RARP table.

route

route is the general utility which is used to manipulate the IP routing table.

slattach

slattach attaches a network interface to a serial line, i.e.. puts a normal terminal line into one of several "network" modes.

Dependencies

Net−tools−1.60 needs the following to be installed:

bash from the bash package sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package rm from the fileutils package msgfmt from the gettext package cc fr

Installing Shadow–20001016

```
Estimated build time:           3 minutes
Estimated required disk space:  6 MB
```

Installation of Shadow Password Suite

Before you install this package, you may want to have a look at the http://hints.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/shadowpasswd_plus.txt lfs hint. It discusses how you can make your system more secure regarding passwords and how to get the most out of this Shadow package.

Install the Shadow Password Suite by running the following commands:

```
cp src/useradd.c src/useradd.c.backup &&
sed 's/\(.*\) (nflg || \(.*\))\(.*\)/\1\2\3/' \
   src/useradd.c > tmp~ &&
mv tmp~ src/useradd.c &&
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install &&
cd etc &&
cp limits login.access /etc &&
sed 's%/var/spool/mail%/var/mail%' login.defs.linux > /etc/login.defs &&
cd /lib &&
mv libshadow.a /usr/lib &&
mv libshadow.la /usr/lib &&
ln -sf libshadow.so.0 libshadow.so &&
cd /usr/lib &&
ln -sf ../../lib/libshadow.so
```

Command explanations

`sed 's/\(.*\) (nflg || \(.*\))\(.*\)/\1\2\3/' src/useradd.c > useradd.c.temp &&`: This sed is used to fix a compilation bug which occurs due to a variable (nflg) being used but not defined.

`cp limits login.access and others:` These files were not installed during the installation of the package so we copy them manually as those files are used to configure authentication details on the system.

`sed "s%/var/spool/mail%/var/mail%" login.defs.linux > /etc/login.defs`: /var/spool/mail is the old location of the user mailboxes. The location that is used nowadays is /var/mail.

Contents

The Shadow Password Suite contains the chage, chfn, chpasswd, chsh, dpasswd, expiry, faillog, gpasswd, groupadd, groupdel, groupmod, grpck, grpconv, grpunconv, lastlog, login, newgrp, passwd, sg, su, logoutd, mkpasswd, newusers, pwck, pwconv, pwunconv, useradd, userdel, usermod, vigr and vipw programs.

Description

chage

chage changes the number of days between password changes and the date of the last password change.

chfn

chfn changes user full name, office number, office extension, and home phone number information for a user's account.

chpasswd

chpasswd reads a file of user name and password pairs from standard input and uses this information to update a group of existing users.

chsh

chsh changes the user login shell.

dpasswd

dpasswd adds, deletes, and updates dial−up passwords for user login shells.

expiry

Checks and enforces password expiration policy.

faillog

faillog formats the contents of the failure log,/var/log/faillog, and maintains failure counts and limits.

gpasswd

gpasswd is used to administer the /etc/group file

groupadd

The groupadd command creates a new group account using the values specified on the command line and the default values from the system.

groupdel

The groupdel command modifies the system account files, deleting all entries that refer to group.

groupmod

The groupmod command modifies the system account files to reflect the changes that are specified on the command line.

grpck

grpck verifies the integrity of the system authentication information.

grpconv

grpunconv converts to shadow group files from normal group files.

grpunconv

grpunconv converts from shadow group files to normal group files.

lastlog

lastlog formats and prints the contents of the last login log, /var/log/lastlog. The login−name, port, and last login time will be printed.

login

login is used to establish a new session with the system.

newgrp

newgrp is used to change the current group ID during a login session.

passwd

passwd changes passwords for user and group accounts.

sg

sg executes command as a different group ID.

su

Change the effective user id and group id to that of a user. This replaces the su programs that's installed from the Shellutils package.

logoutd

logoutd enforces the login time and port restrictions specified in /etc/porttime.

mkpasswd

mkpasswd reads a file in the format given by the flags and converts it to the corresponding database file format.

newusers

newusers reads a file of user name and clear text password pairs and uses this information to update a group of existing users or to create new users.

pwck

pwck verifies the integrity of the system authentication information.

pwconv

pwconv converts to shadow passwd files from normal passwd files.

pwunconv

pwunconv converts from shadow passwd files to normal files.

useradd

useradd creates a new user or update default new user information.

userdel

userdel modifies the system account files, deleting all entries that refer to a specified login name.

usermod

usermod modifies the system account files to reflect the changes that are specified on the command line.

vipw and vigr

vipw and vigr will edit the files /etc/passwd and /etc/group, respectively. With the −s flag, they will edit the shadow versions of those files, /etc/shadow and /etc/gshadow, respectively.

Dependencies

Shadow−20001016 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from th

Installing Sysklogd–1.4.1

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  710 KB
```

Installation of Sysklogd

Install Sysklogd by running the following commands:

```
make &&
make install
```

Contents

The Sysklogd package contains the klogd and syslogd programs.

Description

klogd

klogd is a system daemon which intercepts and logs Linux kernel messages.

syslogd

Syslogd provides a kind of logging that many modern programs use. Every logged message contains at least a time and a hostname field, normally a program name field, too, but that depends on how trusty the logging program is.

Dependencies

Sysklogd–1.4.1 needs the following to be installed:

as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package strip from the binutils package install from the fileutils package gcc rom the gcc package make from the make package

Installing Sysvinit–2.83

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  630 KB
```

Installation of Sysvinit

When run levels are changed (for example when going to shutdown the system) the init program is going to send the TERM and KILL signals to all the processes that init started. But init prints a message to the screen saying "sending all processes the TERM signal" and the same for the KILL signal. This implies that init sends this signal to all the currently running processes, which isn't the case. To avoid this confusion, you change the init.c file so that the sentence reads "sending all processes started by init the TERM signal" by running the following commands. If you don't want to change it, skip it.

```
cp src/init.c src/init.c.backup &&
sed 's/\(.*\)\(Sending processes\)\(.*\)/\1\2 started by init\3/' \
   src/init.c > tmp~ &&
mv tmp~ src/init.c
```

Install Sysvinit by running the following commands:

```
make -C src &&
make -C src install
```

Contents

The Sysvinit package contains the halt, init, killall5, last, lastb, mesg, pidof, poweroff, reboot, runlevel, shutdown, sulogin, telinit, utmpdump, wall,

Description

halt

Halt notes that the system is being brought down in the file /var/log/wtmp, and then either tells the kernel to halt, reboot or poweroff the system. If halt or reboot is called when the system is not in runlevel 0 or 6, shutdown will be invoked instead (with the flag –h or –r).

init

Init is the parent of all processes. Its primary role is to create processes from a script stored in the file /etc/inittab. This file usually has entries which cause init to spawn gettys on each line that users can log in. It also controls autonomous processes required by any particular system.

killall5

killall5 is the SystemV killall command. It sends a signal to all processes except the processes in its own session, so it won't kill the shell that is running the script it was called from.

last

last searches back through the file /var/log/wtmp (or the file designated by the −f flag) and displays a list of all users logged in (and out) since that file was created.

lastb

lastb is the same as last, except that by default it shows a log of the file /var/log/btmp, which contains all the bad login attempts.

mesg

Mesg controls the access to the users terminal by others. It's typically used to allow or disallow other users to write to his terminal.

pidof

Pidof finds the process id's (pids) of the named programs and prints those id's on standard output.

poweroff

poweroff is equivalent to shutdown −h −p now. It halts the computer and switches off the computer (when using an APM compliant BIOS and APM is enabled in the kernel).

reboot

reboot is equivalent to shutdown −r now. It reboots the computer.

runlevel

Runlevel reads the system utmp file (typically /var/run/utmp) to locate the runlevel record, and then prints the previous and current system runlevel on its standard output, separated by a single space.

shutdown

shutdown brings the system down in a secure way. All logged−in users are notified that the system is going down, and login is blocked.

sulogin

sulogin is invoked by init when the system goes into single user mode (this is done through an entry in /etc/inittab). Init also tries to execute sulogin when it is passed the −b flag from the boot loader (eg, LILO).

telinit

telinit sends appropriate signals to init, telling it which runlevel to change to.

utmpdump

utmpdumps prints the content of a file (usually /var/run/utmp) on standard output in a user friendly format.

wall

Wall sends a message to everybody logged in with their mesg permission set to yes.

Dependencies

Sysvinit−2.82 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package chown from the fileutils package install from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package mknod from the fileutils package rm from the fileutils package cc fr

Installing Tar–1.13

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  7 MB
```

Installation of Tar

If you want to be able to directly use bzip2 files with tar, you can use the tar patch available from the LFS FTP site. This patch will add the –j option to tar which works the same as the –z option to tar (which can be used for gzip files).

Apply the patch by running the following command:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../tar-1.13.patch
```

Install Tar by running the following commands from the toplevel directory:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --libexecdir=/usr/bin \
   --bindir=/bin &&
make &&
make install
```

Contents

The tar package contains the rmt and tar programs.

Description

rmt

rmt is a program used by the remote dump and restore programs in manipulating a magnetic tape drive through an interprocess communication connection.

tar

tar is an archiving program designed to store and extract files from an archive file known as a tar file.

Dependencies

Tar–1.13 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Installing Textutils–2.0

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  15 MB
```

Installation of Textutils

Install Textutils by running the following commands:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr &&
make &&
make install &&
mv /usr/bin/cat /bin
```

Contents

The Textutils package contains the cat, cksum, comm, csplit, cut, expand, fmt, fold, head, join, md5sum, nl, od, paste, pr, ptx, sort, split, sum, tac, tail, tr, tsort, unexpand, uniq and wc programs.

Description

cat

cat concatenates file(s) or standard input to standard output.

cksum

cksum prints CRC checksum and byte counts of each specified file.

comm

comm compares two sorted files line by line.

csplit

csplit outputs pieces of a file separated by (a) pattern(s) to files xx01, xx02, ..., and outputs byte counts of each piece to standard output.

cut

cut prints selected parts of lines from specified files to standard output.

expand

expand converts tabs in files to spaces, writing to standard output.

fmt

fmt reformats each paragraph in the specified file(s), writing to standard output.

fold

fold wraps input lines in each specified file (standard input by default), writing to standard output.

head

Print first xx (10 by default) lines of each specified file to standard output.

join

join joins lines of two files on a common field.

md5sum

md5sum prints or checks MD5 checksums.

nl

nl writes each specified file to standard output, with line numbers added.

od

od writes an unambiguous representation, octal bytes by default, of a specified file to standard output.

paste

paste writes lines consisting of the sequentially corresponding lines from each specified file, separated by TABs, to standard output.

pr

pr paginates or columnates files for printing.

ptx

ptx produces a permuted index of file contents.

sort

sort writes sorted concatenation of files to standard output.

split

split outputs fixed−size pieces of an input file to PREFIXaa, PREFIXab, ...

sum

sum prints checksum and block counts for each specified file.

tac

tac writes each specified file to standard output, last line first.

tail

tail print the last xx (10 by default) lines of each specified file to standard output.

tr

tr translates, squeezes, and/or deletes characters from standard input, writing to standard output.

tsort

tsort writes totally ordered lists consistent with the partial ordering in specified files.

unexpand

unexpand converts spaces in each file to tabs, writing to standard output.

uniq

Uniq removes duplicate lines from a sorted file.

wc

wc prints line, word, and byte counts for each specified file, and a total line if more than one file is specified.

Dependencies

Textutils−2.0 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Installing Util–linux–2.11m

```
Estimated build time:           1 minute
Estimated required disk space:  9 MB
```

FHS compliance notes

The FHS recommends that we use /var/lib/hwclock as the location of the adjtime file, instead of the usual /etc. To make hwclock, which is part of the util–linux package, FHS–compliant, run the following.

```
cp hwclock/hwclock.c hwclock/hwclock.c.backup &&
sed 's%etc/adjtime%var/lib/hwclock/adjtime%' \
   hwclock/hwclock.c > tmp~ &&
mv tmp~ hwclock/hwclock.c &&
mkdir -p /var/lib/hwclock
```

Installation of Util–Linux

Install Util–Linux by running the following commands:

```
./configure &&
make HAVE_SLN=yes ADD_RAW=yes &&
make HAVE_SLN=yes ADD_RAW=yes install
```

Command explanations

HAVE_SLN=yes: We don't build this program because it already was installed by Glibc.

Contents

The Util–linux package contains the agetty, arch, blockdev, cal, cfdisk, chkdupexe, col, colcrt, colrm, column, ctrlaltdel, cytune, ddate, dmesg, elvtune, fdformat, fdisk, fsck.minix, getopt, hexdump, hwclock, ipcrm, ipcs, kill, logger, look, losetup, mcookie, mkfs, mkfs.bfs, mkfs.minix, mkswap, more, mount, namei, umount, ramsize, rdev, readprofile, rename, renice, rev, rootflags, script, setfdprm, setsid, setterm, sfdisk, swapdev, swapoff, swapon, tunelp, ul, vidmode, whereis, and write programs.

Description

agetty

agetty opens a tty port, prompts for a login name and invokes the /bin/login command.

arch

arch prints the machine architecture.

blockdev

blockdev allows to call block device ioctls from the command line

cal

cal displays a simple calender.

cfdisk

cfdisk is an libncurses based disk partition table manipulator.

chkdupexe

chkdupexe finds duplicate executables.

col

col filters reverse line feeds from input.

colcrt

colcrt filters nroff output for CRT previewing.

colrm

colrm removes columns from a file.

column

column columnates lists.

ctrlaltdel

ctrlaltdel sets the function of the CTRL+ALT+DEL key combination (hard or soft reset).

cytune

cytune queries and modifies the interruption threshold for the Cyclades driver.

ddate

ddate converts Gregorian dates to Discordian dates.

dmesg

dmesg is used to examine or control the kernel ring buffer (boot messages from the kernel).

elvtune

elvtune allows to tune the I/O elevator per block device queue basis.

fdformat

fdformat low−level formats a floppy disk.

fdisk

fdisk is a disk partition table manipulator.

fsck.minix

fsck.minix performs a consistency check for the Linux MINIX filesystem.

getopt

getops parses command options the same way as the getopt C command.

hexdump

hexdump displays specified files, or standard input, in a user specified format (ascii, decimal, hexadecimal, octal).

hwclock

hwclock queries and sets the hardware clock (Also called the RTC or BIOS clock).

ipcrm

ipcrm removes a specified resource.

ipcs

ipcs provides information on IPC facilities.

kill

kill sends a specified signal to the specified process.

logger

logger makes entries in the system log.

look

look displays lines beginning with a given string.

losetup

losetup sets up and controls loop devices.

mcookie

mcookie generates magic cookies for xauth.

mkfs

mkfs builds a Linux filesystem on a device, usually a harddisk partition.

mkfs.bfs

mkfs.bfs creates a SCO bfs file system on a device, usually a harddisk partition.

mkfs.minix

mkfs.minix creates a Linux MINIX filesystem on a device, usually a harddisk partition.

mkswap

mkswap sets up a Linux swap area on a device or in a file.

more

more is a filter for paging through text one screen full at a time.

mount

mount mounts a filesystem from a device to a directory (mount point).

namei

namei follows a pathname until a terminal point is found.

umount

umount unmounts a mounted filesystem.

ramsize

ramsize queries and sets RAM disk size.

rdev

rdev queries and sets image root device, swap device, RAM disk size, or video mode.

readprofile

readprofile reads kernel profiling information.

rename

rename renames files.

renice

renice alters priority of running processes.

rev

rev reverses lines of a file.

rootflags

rootflags queries and sets extra information used when mounting root.

script

script makes typescript of terminal session.

setfdprm

setfdprm sets user−provides floppy disk parameters.

setsid

setsid runs programs in a new session.

setterm

setterm sets terminal attributes.

sfdisk

sfdisk is a disk partition table manipulator.

swapdev

swapdev queries and sets swap device.

swapoff

swapoff disables devices and files for paging and swapping.

swapon

swapon enables devices and files for paging and swapping.

tunelp

tunelp sets various parameters for the LP device.

ul

ul reads a file and translates occurrences of underscores to the sequence which indicates underlining for the terminal in use.

vidmode

vidmode queries and sets the video mode.

whereis

whereis locates a binary, source and manual page for a command.

write

write sends a message to another user.

Dependencies

Util−linux−2.11h needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package chgrp from the fileutils package chmod from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package mkdir from the fileutils package mv from the fileutils package rm fr from the sh−utils package whoami from the sh−utils package cat from the textutils package

Removing old NSS library files

If you have copied the NSS Library files from the normal Linux system to the LFS system (because the normal system runs Glibc−2.0) it's time to remove them now by running:

```
rm /lib/libnss*.so.1 /lib/libnss*2.0*
```

Configuring essential software

Now that all software is installed, all that we need to do to get a few programs running properly is to create their configuration files.

Configuring Vim

By default Vim runs in vi compatible mode. Some people might like this, but we have a high preference to run vim in vim mode (else we wouldn't have included Vim in this book but the original Vi). Create the `/root/.vimrc` by running the following:

```
cat > /root/.vimrc << "EOF"
" Begin /root/.vimrc

set nocompatible
set bs=2

" End /root/.vimrc
EOF
```

Configuring Glibc

We need to create the /etc/nsswitch.conf file. Although glibc should provide defaults when this file is missing or corrupt, its defaults don't work well with networking which will be dealt with in a later chapter. Also, our timezone needs to be set up.

Create a new file `/etc/nsswitch.conf` by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/nsswitch.conf << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/nsswitch.conf

passwd: files
group: files
shadow: files

publickey: files

hosts: files dns
networks: files

protocols: db files
services: db files
ethers: db files
rpc: db files

netgroup: db files

# End /etc/nsswitch.conf
EOF
```

The **`tzselect`** script has to be run and the questions regarding your timezone have to be answered. When you're done, the script will give the location of the needed timezone file.

Create the `/etc/localtime` symlink by running:

```
cd /etc &&
ln -sf ../usr/share/zoneinfo/<tzselect's output> localtime
```

tzselect's output can be something like *EST5EDT* or *Canada/Eastern*.

The symlink you'd create with that information would be:

```
ln -sf ../usr/share/zoneinfo/EST5EDT localtime
```

Or:

```
ln -sf ../usr/share/zoneinfo/Canada/Eastern localtime
```

Configuring Dynamic Loader

By default the dynamic loader searches a few default paths for dynamic libraries, so there normally isn't a need for the `/etc/ld.so.conf` file unless the system has extra directories in which you want the system to search for libraries. The `/usr/local/lib` directory isn't searched through for dynamic libraries by default, so we want to add this path so when you install software you won't be surprised by them not running for some reason.

Create a new file `/etc/ld.so.conf` by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/ld.so.conf << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/ld.so.conf

/lib
/usr/lib
/usr/local/lib

# End /etc/ld.so.conf
EOF
```

Although it's not necessary to add the `/lib` and `/usr/lib` directories it doesn't hurt. This way it can be seen right away what's being searched and a you don't have to remember the default search paths if you don't want to.

Configuring Sysklogd

Create a new file `/etc/syslog.conf` by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/syslog.conf << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/syslog.conf

auth,authpriv.* -/var/log/auth.log
*.*;auth,authpriv.none -/var/log/sys.log
daemon.* -/var/log/daemon.log
kern.* -/var/log/kern.log
mail.* -/var/log/mail.log
user.* -/var/log/user.log
*.emerg *

# End /etc/syslog.conf
EOF
```

Configuring Shadow Password Suite

This package contains the utilities to modify user's passwords, add new users/groups, delete users/groups and more. We're not going to explain what 'password shadowing' means. All about that can be read in the doc/HOWTO file within the unpacked shadow password suite's source tree. There's one thing you should keep in mind, if you decide to use shadow support, that programs that need to verify passwords (examples are xdm, ftp daemons, pop3 daemons, etc) need to be 'shadow−compliant', eg. they need to be able to work with shadow'ed passwords.

To enable shadow'ed passwords, run the following command:

```
/usr/sbin/pwconv
```

Configuring Sysvinit

Create a new file `/etc/inittab` by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/inittab << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/inittab

id:3:initdefault:

si::sysinit:/etc/init.d/rcS

l0:0:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 0
l1:S1:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 1
l2:2:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 2
l3:3:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 3
l4:4:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 4
l5:5:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 5
l6:6:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 6

ca:12345:ctrlaltdel:/sbin/shutdown -t1 -a -r now

su:S016:respawn:/sbin/sulogin

1:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty tty1 9600
2:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty tty2 9600
3:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty tty3 9600
4:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty tty4 9600
5:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty tty5 9600
6:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty tty6 9600

# End /etc/inittab
EOF
```

Creating the /var/run/utmp, /var/log/wtmp and /var/log/btmp files

Programs like login, shutdown, uptime and others want to read from and write to the /var/run/utmp /var/log/btmp and /var/log/wtmp. These files contain information about who is currently logged in. It also contains information on when the computer was last booted and shutdown and a record of the bad login attempts.

Create these files with their proper permissions by running the following commands:

```
touch /var/run/utmp /var/log/wtmp \
    /var/log/btmp /var/log/lastlog &&
chmod 644 /var/run/utmp /var/log/wtmp \
   /var/log/btmp /var/log/lastlog
```

Creating root password

Choose a password for user root and create it by running the following command:

```
passwd root
```

Chapter 7. Creating system boot scripts

Introduction

This chapter will create the necessary scripts that are run at boot time. These scripts perform tasks such as remounting the root file system mounted read−only by the kernel into read−write mode, activating the swap partition(s), running a check on the root file system to make sure it's intact, setting up networking and starting the daemons that the system uses.

We will be using SysV style init scripts. We have chosen this style because it is widely used and we feel comfortable with it. If you want to try something else, someone has written an LFS−Hint on BSD style init scripts at http://hints.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/bsd−init.txt .

If you decided to copy&paste the scripts from this chapter, you would do best to copy&paste them in small chunks, one screenfull at a time. Some scripts are too large to fit in the copy buffer and will be truncated when you paste it.

How does the booting process with these scripts work?

Linux uses a special booting facility named SysVinit. It's based on a concept of *runlevels*. It can be widely different from one system to another, so it can't be assumed that because things worked in <insert distro name> they should work like that in LFS too. LFS has its own way of doing things, but it respects generally accepted standards.

SysVinit (which we'll call *init* from now on) works using a runlevels scheme. There are 7 (from 0 to 6) runlevels (actually, there are more runlevels but they are for special cases and generally not used. The init man page describes those details), and each one of those corresponds to the things the computer is supposed to do when it starts up. The default runlevel is 3. Here are the descriptions of the different runlevels as they are often implemented:

0: halt the computer 1: single−user mode 2: multi−user mode without networking 3: multi−user mode with networking 4: r

The command used to change runlevels is **`init <runlevel>`** where <runlevel> is the target runlevel. For example, to reboot the computer, a user would issue the init 6 command. The reboot command is just an alias, as is the halt command an alias to init 0.

The /etc/init.d/rcS script is run at every startup of the computer, before any runlevel is executed and runs the scripts listed in /etc/rcS.d

There are a number of directories under /etc that look like like rc?.d where ? is the number of the runlevel and rcS.d which contain a number of symbolic links. Some begin with an K, the others begin with an S, and all of them have three numbers following the initial letter. The K means to stop (kill) a service, and the S means to start a service. The numbers determine the order in which the scripts are run, from 000 to 999; the lower the number the sooner it gets executed. When init switches to another runlevel, the appropriate services get killed and others get started.

The real scripts are in /etc/init.d. They do all the work, and the symlinks all point to them. Killing links and starting links point to the same script in /etc/init.d. That's because the scripts can be called with different parameters like start, stop, restart, reload, status. When a K link is encountered, the appropriate script is run with the stop argument. When a S link is encountered, the appropriate script is run with the start argument.

There is one exception. Links that start with an S in the rc0.d and rc6.d directories will not cause anything to be started. They will be called with the parameter *stop* to stop something. The logic behind it is that when you are going to reboot or halt the system, you don't want to start anything, only stop the system.

These are descriptions of what the arguments make the scripts do:

- *start*: The service is started.
- *stop*: The service is stopped.
- *restart*: The service is stopped and then started again.
-

reload: The configuration of the service is updated. This is used after the configuration file of a service was modified, when the service doesn't need to be restarted.

- *status*: Tells if the service is running and with which PID's.

Feel free to modify the way the boot process works (after all it's your LFS system, not ours). The files here are just an example of how it can be done in a nice way (well what we consider nice anyway. You may hate it).

Creating directories

We need to start by creating a few extra directories that are used by the boot scripts. These directories are created by running:

```
cd /etc &&
mkdir rc{0,1,2,3,4,5,6,S}.d init.d sysconfig &&
cd init.d
```

Creating the rc script

The first main boot script is the `/etc/init.d/rc` script. Create the `/etc/init.d/rc` script by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/init.d/rc << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/rc
#
# By Jason Pearce  - jason.pearce@linux.org
# Modified by Gerard Beekmans - gerard@linuxfromscratch.org
# print_error_msg based on ideas by Simon Perreault -
# nomis80@videotron.ca
#

#
# Include the functions declared in the /etc/init.d/functions file
#

source /etc/init.d/functions

#
# The print_error_msg function prints an error message when an unforeseen
# error occurred that wasn't trapped for some reason by a evaluate_retval
# call or error checking in different ways.

print_error_msg()
{

        echo
        $FAILURE
        echo -n "You should not read this error message. It means "
        echo "that an unforeseen error "
        echo -n "took place and subscript $i exited with "
        echo "a return value "
        echo -n "of $error_value for an unknown reason. If you're able "
        echo "to trace this error down "
        echo -n "to a bug in one of the files provided by this book, "
        echo "please be so kind to "
        echo -n "inform us at lfs-dev@linuxfromscratch.org"
        $NORMAL
        echo
        echo
        echo "Press a key to continue..."
        read

}

#
# If you uncomment the debug variable below none of the scripts will be
# executed, just the script name and parameters will be echo'ed to the
# screen so you can see how the scripts are called by rc.
#

# Un-comment the following for debugging.
# debug=echo

#
# Start script or program.
#
```

```
startup() {

        $debug "$@"

}

#
# Ignore CTRL-C only in this shell, so we can interrupt subprocesses.
#

trap ":" INT QUIT TSTP

#
# Now find out what the current and what the previous runlevel are. The
# $RUNLEVEL variable is set by init for all it's children. This script
# runs as a child of init.
#

runlevel=$RUNLEVEL

#
# Get first argument. Set new runlevel to this argument. If no runlevel
# was passed to this script we won't change runlevels.
#

[ "$1" != "" ] && runlevel=$1
if [ "$runlevel" = "" ]
then
        echo "Usage: $0 <runlevel>" >&2
        exit 1
fi

#
# The same goes for $PREVLEVEL (see above for $RUNLEVEL). previous will
# be set to the previous run level. If $PREVLEVEL is not set it means
# that there is no previous runlevel and we'll set previous to N.
#

previous=$PREVLEVEL
[ "$previous" = "" ] && previous=N

export runlevel previous

#
# Is there an rc directory for the new runlevel?
#

if [ -d /etc/rc$runlevel.d ]

then

#
# If so, first collect all the K* scripts in the new run level.
#

        if [ $previous != N ]
        then
                for i in /etc/rc$runlevel.d/K*
                do
                [ ! -f $i ] && continue

#
```

```
# the suffix variable will contain the script name without the leading
# Kxxx
#

                        suffix=${i#/etc/rc$runlevel.d/K[0-9][0-9][0-9]}
#
# If there is a start script for this K script in the previous runlevel
# determine what it's full path is
#
            previous_start=/etc/rc$previous.d/S[0-9][0-9][0-9]$suffix
#
# If there was no previous run level it could be that something was
# started in rcS.d (sysinit level) so we'll determine the path for that
# possibility as well.
#

                        sysinit_start=/etc/rcS.d/S[0-9][0-9][0-9]$suffix

#
# Stop the service if there is a start script in the previous run level
# or in the sysinit level. If previous_start or sysinit_start do not
# exist the 'continue' command is run which causes the script to abort
# this iteration of the for loop and continue with the next iteration.
# This boils down to that it won't run the commands after the next two
# lines and start over from the top of this for loop. See man bash for
# more info on this.
#

                        [ ! -f $previous_start ] &&
                        [ ! -f $sysinit_start ] && continue

#
# If we found previous_start or sysinit_start, run the K script
#

                        startup $i stop
                        error_value=$?
#
# If the return value of the script is not 0, something went wrong with
# error checking inside the script. the print_error_msg function will be
# called and the message plus the return value of the K script will be
# printed to the screen
#

                        if [ $error_value != 0 ]
                        then
                                print_error_msg
                        fi

                done
        fi

#
# Now run the START scripts for this runlevel.
#

        for i in /etc/rc$runlevel.d/S*
        do
                [ ! -f $i ] && continue

                if [ $previous != N ]
        then
```

```
#
# Find start script in previous runlevel and stop script in this
# runlevel.
#

                        suffix=${i#/etc/rc$runlevel.d/S[0-9][0-9][0-9]}
                        stop=/etc/rc$runlevel.d/K[0-9][0-9][0-9]$suffix
                previous_start=/etc/rc$previous.d/S[0-9][0-9][0-9]$suffix
#
# If there is a start script in the previous level and no stop script in
# this level, we don't have to re-start the service; abort this
# iteration and start the next one.
#

                        [ -f $previous_start ] && [ ! -f $stop ] &&
                        continue
                fi

                case "$runlevel" in
                        0|6)

#
# levels 0 and 6 are halt and reboot levels. We don't really start
# anything here so we call with the 'stop' parameter
#

                                startup $i stop
                                error_value=$?
#
# If the return value of the script is not 0, something went wrong with
# error checking inside the script. the print_error_msg function will be
# called and the message plus the return value of the K script will be
# printed to the screen
#

                                if [ $error_value != 0 ]
                                then
                                        print_error_msg
                                fi
                                ;;
                        *)
                                startup $i start
                                error_value=$?
#
# If the return value of the script is not 0, something went wrong with
# error checking inside the script. the print_error_msg function will be
# called and the message plus the return value of the K script will be
# printed to the screen
#

                                if [ $error_value != 0 ]
                                then
                                        print_error_msg
                                fi
                                ;;
                esac
        done
fi

# End /etc/init.d/rc
EOF
```

Creating the rcS script

The second main boot script is the `rcS` script. Create the `/etc/init.d/rcS` script by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/init.d/rcS << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/rcS

#
# See the rc script for the extensive comments on the constructions
# used here
#

source /etc/init.d/functions

print_error_msg()
{

        echo
        $FAILURE
        echo -n "You should not read this error message. It means "
        echo "that an unforeseen error "
        echo -n "took place and subscript $i exited with "
        echo "a return value "
        echo -n "of $error_value for an unknown reason. If you're able "
        echo "to trace this error down "
        echo -n "to a bug in one of the files provided by this book, "
        echo "please be so kind to "
        echo -n "inform us at lfs-dev@linuxfromscratch.org"
        $NORMAL
        echo
        echo
        echo "Press a key to continue..."
        read

}

runlevel=S
prevlevel=N
umask 022
export runlevel prevlevel

trap ":" INT QUIT TSTP

#
# Collect all the S scripts in /etc/rcS.d and execute them
#

for i in /etc/rcS.d/S*
do
        [ ! -f  "$i" ] && continue;
                $i start
                error_value=$?

                if [ $error_value != 0 ]
                then
                        print_error_msg
                fi
done
```

```
# End /etc/init.d/rcS
EOF
```

Creating the functions script

Create the `/etc/init.d/functions` script by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/init.d/functions << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/functions

#
# Set a few variables that influence the text that's printed on the
# screen. The SET_COL variable starts the text in the column number
# decided by the COL and WCOL section (as defined by the COL
# variable). NORMAL prints text in normal mode.
# SUCCESS prints text in a green colour and FAILURE prints text in a red
# colour
#

# If COLUMNS hasn't been set yet (bash sets it but not when called as
# sh), do it ourself

        if [ -z "$COLUMNS" ]
        then
                # Get the console device if we don't have it already
                # This is ok by the FHS as there is a fallback if
                # /usr/bin/tty isn't available, for example at bootup.
                test -x /usr/bin/tty && CONSOLE=`/usr/bin/tty`
                test -z "$CONSOLE" && CONSOLE=/dev/console

                # Get the console size (rows columns)
                SIZE=$(stty size < $CONSOLE)

                # Strip off the rows leaving the columns
                COLUMNS=${SIZE#*\ }
        fi

COL=$[$COLUMNS - 10]
WCOL=$[$COLUMNS - 30]
SET_COL="echo -en \\033[${COL}G"
SET_WCOL="echo -en \\033[${WCOL}G"
NORMAL="echo -en \\033[0;39m"
SUCCESS="echo -en \\033[1;32m"
WARNING="echo -en \\033[1;33m"
FAILURE="echo -en \\033[1;31m"

#
# The evaluate_retval function evaluates the return value of the process
# that was run just before this function was called. If the return value
# was 0, indicating success, the print_status function is called with
# the 'success' parameter. Otherwise the print_status function is called
# with the failure parameter.
#

evaluate_retval()
{
        if [ $? = 0 ]
        then
                print_status success
        else
                print_status failure
        fi
```

```
}

#
# The print_status prints [  OK  ] or [FAILED] to the screen. OK appears
# in the colour defined by the SUCCESS variable and FAILED appears in
# the colour defined by the FAILURE variable. Both are printed starting
# in the column defined by the COL variable.
#

print_status()
{

#
# If no parameters are given to the print_status function, print usage
# information.
#

        if [ $# = 0 ]
        then
                echo "Usage: print_status {success|failure}"
                return 1
        fi

        case "$1" in
                success)
                        $SET_COL
                        echo -n "[  "
                        $SUCCESS
                        echo -n "OK"
                        $NORMAL
                        echo "  ]"
                        ;;
                warning)
                        $SET_COL
                        echo -n "[ "
                        $WARNING
                        echo -n "ATTN"
                        $NORMAL
                        echo " ]"
                        ;;
                failure)
                        $SET_COL
                        echo -n "["
                        $FAILURE
                        echo -n "FAILED"
                        $NORMAL
                        echo "]"
                        ;;
        esac

}

#
# The loadproc function starts a process (often a daemon) with
# proper error checking
#

loadproc()
{

#
# If no parameters are given to the print_status function, print usage
```

```
# information.
#

        if [ $# = 0 ]
        then
                echo "Usage: loadproc {program}"
                exit 1
        fi
#
# Find the basename of the first parameter (the daemon's name without
# the path
# that was provided so /usr/sbin/syslogd becomes plain 'syslogd' after
# basename ran)
#

        base=$(/usr/bin/basename $1)
#
# the pidlist variable will contains the output of the pidof command.
# pidof will try to find the PID's that belong to a certain string;
# $base in this case
#

        pidlist=$(/bin/pidof -o $$ -o $PPID -o %PPID -x $base)

        pid=""

        for apid in $pidlist
        do
                if [ -d /proc/$apid ]
                then
                        pid="$pid $apid"
                fi
        done
#
# If the $pid variable contains anything (from the previous for loop) it
# means the daemon is already running
#

        if [ ! -n "$pid" ]
        then
#
# Empty $pid variable means it's not running, so we run "$@" (all
# parameters giving to this function from the script) and then check the
# return value
#

                "$@"
                evaluate_retval
        else
#
# The variable $pid was not empty, meaning it was already running. We'll
# print [ ATTN ] now
#

                $SET_WCOL
                echo -n "Already running"
                print_status warning
        fi

}

#
```

```
# The killproc function kills a process with proper error checking
#

killproc()
{

#
# If no parameters are given to the print_status function, print usage
# information.
#

        if [ $# = 0 ]
        then
                echo "Usage: killproc {program} [signal]"
                exit 1
        fi

#
# Find the basename of the first parameter (the daemon's name without
# the path
# that was provided so /usr/sbin/syslogd becomes plain 'syslogd' after
# basename ran)
#

        base=$(/usr/bin/basename $1)

#
# Check if we gave a signal to kill the process with (like -HUP, -TERM,
# -KILL, etc) to this function (the second parameter). If no second
# parameter was provided set the nolevel variable. Else set the
# killlevel variable to the value of $2 (the second parameter)
#

        if [ "$2" != "" ]
        then
                killlevel=-$2
        else
                nolevel=1
        fi

#
# the pidlist variable will contains the output of the pidof command.
# pidof will try to find the PID's that belong to a certain string;
# $base in this case
#

        pidlist=$(/bin/pidof -o $$ -o $PPID -o %PPID -x $base)

        pid=""

        for apid in $pidlist
        do
                if [ -d /proc/$apid ]
                then
                        pid="$pid $apid"
                fi
        done

#
# If $pid contains something from the previous for loop it means one or
# more PID's were found that belongs to the processes to be killed
#
```

```
        if [ -n "$pid" ]
        then

#
# If no kill level was specified we'll try -TERM first and then sleep
# for 2 seconds to allow the kill to be completed
#

                if [ "$nolevel" = 1 ]
                then
                        /bin/kill -TERM $pid

#
# If after -TERM the PID still exists we'll wait 2 seconds before
# trying to kill it with -KILL. If the PID still exist after that, wait
# two more seconds. If the PIDs still exist by then it's safe to assume
# that we cannot kill these PIDs.
#

                        if /bin/ps h $pid >/dev/null 2>&1
                        then
                                /usr/bin/sleep 2
                                if /bin/ps h $pid > /dev/null 2>&1
                                then
                                        /bin/kill -KILL $pid
                                        if /bin/ps h $pid > /dev/null 2>&1
                                        then
                                                /usr/bin/sleep 2
                                        fi
                                fi
                        fi
                        /bin/ps h $pid >/dev/null 2>&1
                        if [ $? = 0 ]
                        then
#
# If after the -KILL it still exists it can't be killed for some reason
# and we'll print [FAILED]
#

                                print_status failure
                        else

#
# It was killed, remove possible stale PID file in /var/run and
# print [  OK  ]
#

                                /bin/rm -f /var/run/$base.pid
                                print_status success
                        fi
                else

#
# A kill level was provided. Kill with the provided kill level and wait
# for 2 seconds to allow the kill to be completed
#

                        /bin/kill $killlevel $pid
                        if /bin/ps h $pid > /dev/null 2>&1
                        then
                                /usr/bin/sleep 2
```

```
                        fi
                        /bin/ps h $pid >/dev/null 2>&1
                        if [ $? = 0 ]
                        then

#
# If ps' return value is 0 it means it ran ok which indicates that the
# PID still exists. This means the process wasn't killed properly with
# the signal provided. Print [FAILED]
#

                                print_status failure
                        else

#
# If the return value was 1 or higher it means the PID didn't exist
# anymore which means it was killed successfully. Remove possible stale
# PID file and print [  OK  ]
#

                                /bin/rm -f /var/run/$base.pid
                                print_status success
                        fi
                fi
        else

#
# The PID didn't exist so we can't attempt to kill it. Print [ ATTN ]
#

                $SET_WCOL
                echo -n "Not running"
                print_status warning
        fi
}

#
# The reloadproc functions sends a signal to a daemon telling it to
# reload it's configuration file. This is almost identical to the
# killproc function with the exception that it won't try to kill it with
# a -KILL signal (aka -9)
#

reloadproc()
{

#
# If no parameters are given to the print_status function, print usage
# information.
#

        if [ $# = 0 ]
        then
                echo "Usage: reloadproc {program} [signal]"
                exit 1
        fi

#
# Find the basename of the first parameter (the daemon's name without
# the path that was provided so /usr/sbin/syslogd becomes plain 'syslogd'
# after basename ran)
#
```

```
        base=$(/usr/bin/basename $1)

#
# Check if we gave a signal to send to the process (like -HUP)
# to this function (the second parameter). If no second
# parameter was provided set the nolevel variable. Else set the
# killlevel variable to the value of $2 (the second parameter)
#

        if [ -n "$2" ]
        then
                killlevel=-$2
        else
                nolevel=1
        fi

#
# the pidlist variable will contains the output of the pidof command.
# pidof will try to find the PID's that belong to a certain string;
# $base in this case
#

        pidlist=$(/bin/pidof -o $$ -o $PPID -o %PPID -x $base)

        pid=""

        for apid in $pidlist
        do
                if [ -d /proc/$apid ]
                then
                        pid="$pid $apid"
                fi
        done

#
# If $pid contains something from the previous for loop it means one or
# more PID's were found that belongs to the processes to be reloaded
#

        if [ -n "$pid" ]
        then

#
# If nolevel was set we will use the default reload signal SIGHUP.
#

                if [ "$nolevel" = 1 ]
                then
                        /bin/kill -SIGHUP $pid
                        evaluate_retval
                else

#
# Else we will use the provided signal
#

                        /bin/kill $killlevel $pid
                        evaluate_retval
                fi
        else
```

```
#
# If $pid is empty no PID's have been found that belong to the process.
# Print [ ATTN ]
#

                $SET_WCOL
                echo -n "Not running"
                print_status warning
        fi
}

#
# The statusproc function will try to find out if a process is running
# or not
#

statusproc()
{

#
# If no parameters are given to the print_status function, print usage
# information.
#

        if [ $# = 0 ]
        then
                echo "Usage: status {program}"
                return 1
        fi

#
# $pid will contain a list of PID's that belong to a process
#

        pid=$(/bin/pidof -o $$ -o $PPID -o %PPID -x $1)
        if [ -n "$pid" ]
        then

#
# If $pid contains something, the process is running, print the contents
# of the $pid variable
#

                echo "$1 running with Process ID $pid"
                return 0
        fi

#
# If $pid doesn't contain it check if a PID file exists and inform the
# user about this stale file.
#

        if [ -f /var/run/$1.pid ]
        then
                pid=$(/usr/bin/head -1 /var/run/$1.pid)
                if [ -n "$pid" ]
                then
                        echo "$1 not running but /var/run/$1.pid exists"
                        return 1
                fi
        else
                echo "$1 is not running"
```

```
        fi

}

# End /etc/init.d/functions
EOF
```

Creating the checkfs script

Create the `/etc/init.d/checkfs` script by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/init.d/checkfs << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/checkfs

#
# Include the functions declared in the /etc/init.d/functions file
#

source /etc/init.d/functions

#
# Activate all the swap partitions declared in the /etc/fstab file
#

echo -n "Activating swap..."
/sbin/swapon -a
evaluate_retval

#
# If the /fastboot file exists we don't want to run the partition checks
#

if [ -f /fastboot ]
then
        echo "Fast boot, no file system check"
else

#
# Mount the root partition read-only (just in case the kernel mounts it
# read-write and we don't want to run fsck on a read-write mounted
# partition).
#

        /bin/mount -n -o remount,ro /
        if [ $? = 0 ]
        then

#
# If the /forcefsck file exists we want to force a partition check even
# if the partition was unmounted cleanly the last time
#

                if [ -f /forcefsck ]
                then
                        echo -n "/forcefsck exists, forcing "
                        echo "file system check"
                        force="-f"
                else
                        force=""
                fi

#
# Check all the file systems mentioned in /etc/fstab that have the
# fs_passno value set to 1 or 2 (the 6th field. See man fstab for more
# info)
#
```

```
                echo "Checking file systems..."
                /sbin/fsck $force -a -A -C -T

#
# If something went wrong during the checks of one of the partitions,
# fsck will exit with a return value greater than 1. If this is
# the case we start sulogin so you can repair the damage manually
#

                if [ $? -gt 1 ]
                then
                        $FAILURE
                        echo
                        echo -n "fsck failed. Please repair your file "
                        echo "systems manually by running /sbin/fsck"
                        echo "without the -a option"
                        echo
                        echo -n "Please note that the root file system "
                        echo "is currently mounted in read-only mode."
                        echo
                        echo -n "I will start sulogin now. When you  "
                        echo "logout I will reboot your system."
                        echo
                        $NORMAL
                        /sbin/sulogin
                        /sbin/reboot -f
                else
                        print_status success
                fi

        else

#
# If the remount to read-only mode didn't work abort the fsck and print
# an error
#

                echo -n "Cannot check root file system because it "
                echo "could not be mounted in read-only mode."
        fi
fi

# End /etc/init.d/checkfs
EOF
```

Creating the halt script

Create the `/etc/init.d/halt` script by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/init.d/halt << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/halt

#
# Call halt. See man halt for the meaning of the parameters
#

/sbin/halt -d -f -i -p

# End /etc/init.d/halt
EOF
```

Creating the loadkeys script

You only need to create this script if you don't have a default 101 keys US keyboard layout.

Create the `/etc/init.d/loadkeys` script by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/init.d/loadkeys << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/loadkeys

#
# Include the functions declared in the /etc/init.d/functions file
#

source /etc/init.d/functions

#
# Include /etc/sysconfig/keyboard which contains the LAYOUT variable
#

source /etc/sysconfig/keyboard

#
# Load the default keymap file
#

echo -n "Loading keymap..."
/bin/loadkeys $LAYOUT 2>/dev/null
evaluate_retval

# End /etc/init.d/loadkeys
EOF
```

Creating the /etc/sysconfig/keyboard file

Create a new file `/etc/sysconfig/keyboard` by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/sysconfig/keyboard << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/sysconfig/keyboard

LAYOUT=<path-to-keymap>

# End /etc/sysconfig/keyboard
EOF
```

Replace **<path-to-keymap>** with the path to the keymap you have selected. For example, if you have chosen the US keymap, you would replace it with **/usr/share/kbd/keymaps/i386/qwerty/us.map.gz**

Creating the mountfs script

Create the `/etc/init.d/mountfs` script by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/init.d/mountfs << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/mountfs

#
# Include the functions declared in the /etc/init.d/functions file
#

source /etc/init.d/functions

case "$1" in
    start)

        #
        # Remount the root partition in read-write mode. -n tells mount
        # not to
        # write to the /etc/mtab file (because it can't do this. The
        # root
        # partition is most likely still mounted in read-only mode
        #

        echo -n "Remounting root file system in read-write mode..."
        /bin/mount -n -o remount,rw /
        evaluate_retval

        #
        # First empty the /etc/mtab file. Then remount root partition
        # in read-write
        # mode again but pass -f to mount. This way mount does
        # everything
        # except the mount itself. This is needed for it to write to the
        # mtab
        # file which contains a list of currently mounted file systems.
        #

        echo > /etc/mtab
        /bin/mount -f -o remount,rw /

        #
        # Remove the possible /fastboot and /forcefsck files. they are
        # only
        # supposed to be used during the next reboot's checkfs which just
        # happened. If you want to fastboot or forcefsck again you'll
        # have to
        # recreate the files
        #

        /bin/rm -f /fastboot /forcefsck

        #
        # Walk through /etc/fstab and mount all file systems that don't
        # have the noauto option set in the fs_mntops field (the 4th
        # field.
        # See man fstab for more info)
        #
```

```
        echo -n "Mounting other file systems..."
        /bin/mount -a
        evaluate_retval
        ;;

    stop)

        #
        # Deactivate all the swap partitions
        #

        echo -n "Deactivating swap..."
        /sbin/swapoff -a
        evaluate_retval

        #
        # And unmount all the file systems, mounting the root file
        # system
        # read-only (all are unmounted but because root can't be
        # unmounted
        # at this point mount will automatically mount it read-only
        # which
        # is what supposed to happen. This way no data can be written
        # anymore from disk)
        #

        echo -n "Unmounting file systems..."
        /bin/umount -a -r
        evaluate_retval
        ;;

    *)
        echo "Usage: $0 {start|stop}"
        exit 1
    ;;
esac

# End /etc/init.d/mountfs
EOF
```

Creating the reboot script

Create the `/etc/init.d/reboot` script by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/init.d/reboot << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/reboot

#
# Call reboot. See man halt for the meaning of the parameters
#


echo "System reboot in progress..."

/sbin/reboot -d -f -i

# End /etc/init.d/reboot
EOF
```

Creating the sendsignals script

Create the `/etc/init.d/sendsignals` script by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/init.d/sendsignals << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/sendsignals

#
# Include the functions declared in the /etc/init.d/functions file
#

source /etc/init.d/functions

#
# Send all the remaining processes the TERM signal
#

echo -n "Sending all processes the TERM signal..."
/sbin/killall5 -15
evaluate_retval

#
# Send all the remaining process (after sending them the TERM signal
# before) the KILL signal.
#

echo -n "Sending all processes the KILL signal..."
/sbin/killall5 -9
evaluate_retval

# End /etc/init.d/sendsignals
EOF
```

Creating the setclock script

The following script is only for real use when the hardware clock (also known as BIOS or CMOS clock) isn't set to GMT time. The recommended setup is setting the hardware clock to GMT and having the time converted to localtime using the /etc/localtime symbolic link. But if an OS is run that doesn't understand a clock set to GMT (most notable are Microsoft OS'es) you may want to set the clock to localtime so that the time is properly displayed on those OS'es. This script will then set the kernel time to the hardware clock without converting the time using the /etc/localtime symlink.

Create the `/etc/init.d/setclock` script by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/init.d/setclock << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/setclock

#
# Include the functions declared in the /etc/init.d/functions file
# and include the variables from the /etc/sysconfig/clock file
#

source /etc/init.d/functions
source /etc/sysconfig/clock

#
# Right now we want to set the kernel clock according to the hardware
# clock, so we use the -hctosys parameter.
#

CLOCKPARAMS="--hctosys"

#
# If the UTC variable is set in the /etc/sysconfig/clock file, add the
# -u parameter as well which tells hwclock that the hardware clock is
# set to UTC time instead of local time.
#

case "$UTC" in
        yes|true|1)
                CLOCKPARAMS="$CLOCKPARAMS --utc"
                ;;
        no|false|0)
                CLOCKPARAMS="$CLOCKPARAMS --localtime"
                ;;
esac

echo -n "Setting clock..."
/sbin/hwclock $CLOCKPARAMS
evaluate_retval

# End /etc/init.d/setclock
EOF
```

Creating the /etc/sysconfig/clock file

If you want to use this script on your system even if the hardware clock is set to GMT, then the UTC variable below has to be changed to the value of *1*.

Create a new file `/etc/sysconfig/clock` by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/sysconfig/clock << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/sysconfig/clock

UTC=0

# End /etc/sysconfig/clock
EOF
```

Now, you may want to take a look at a very good hint explaining how we deal with time on LFS at http://hints.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/time.txt. It explains issues such as timezones, UTC, and the TZ environment variable.

Creating the sysklogd script

Create the `/etc/init.d/sysklogd` script by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/init.d/sysklogd << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/sysklogd

#
# Include the functions declared in the /etc/init.d/functions file
#

source /etc/init.d/functions

case "$1" in
        start)
                echo -n "Starting system log daemon..."
                loadproc /usr/sbin/syslogd -m 0

                echo -n "Starting kernel log daemon..."
                loadproc /usr/sbin/klogd
                ;;

        stop)
                echo -n "Stopping kernel log daemon..."
                killproc klogd

                echo -n "Stopping system log daemon..."
                killproc syslogd
                ;;

        reload)
        echo -n "Reloading system log daemon configuration file..."
                reloadproc syslogd 1
                ;;

        restart)
                $0 stop
                /usr/bin/sleep 1
                $0 start
                ;;

        status)
                statusproc /usr/sbin/syslogd
                statusproc /usr/sbin/klogd
                ;;

        *)
                echo "Usage: $0 {start|stop|reload|restart|status}"
                exit 1
                ;;

esac

# End /etc/init.d/sysklogd
EOF
```

Creating the template script

Create the `/etc/init.d/template` script by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/init.d/template << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/

#
# Include the functions declared in the /etc/init.d/functions file
#

source /etc/init.d/functions

case "$1" in
        start)
                echo -n "Starting ..."
                loadproc
                ;;

        stop)
                echo -n "Stopping ..."
                killproc
                ;;

        reload)
                echo -n "Reloading ..."
                reloadproc
                ;;

        restart)
                $0 stop
                /usr/bin/sleep 1
                $0 start
                ;;

        status)
                statusproc
                ;;

        *)
                echo "Usage: $0 {start|stop|reload|restart|status}"
                exit 1
                ;;

esac

# End /etc/init.d/
EOF
```

Creating the localnet script

Create the `/etc/init.d/localnet` script by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/init.d/localnet << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/localnet

#
# Include the functions declared in the /etc/init.d/functions file
# and include the variables from the /etc/sysconfig/network file.
#

source /etc/init.d/functions
source /etc/sysconfig/network

case "$1" in
        start)
                echo -n "Bringing up the loopback interface..."
                /sbin/ifconfig lo 127.0.0.1
                evaluate_retval

                echo -n "Setting up hostname..."
                /bin/hostname $HOSTNAME
                evaluate_retval
                ;;

        stop)
                echo -n "Bringing down the loopback interface..."
                /sbin/ifconfig lo down
                evaluate_retval
                ;;

        restart)
                $0 stop
                sleep 1
                $0 start
                ;;
        *)
                echo "Usage: $0: {start|stop|restart}"
                exit 1
                ;;
esac

# End /etc/init.d/localnet
EOF
```

Creating the /etc/sysconfig/network file

A new file `/etc/sysconfig/network` is created and the hostname is put in it by running:

```
echo "HOSTNAME=lfs" > /etc/sysconfig/network
```

"lfs" needs to be replaced with the name the computer is to be called. You should not enter the FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name) here. That information will be put in the `/etc/hosts` file later.

Creating the /etc/hosts file

If a network card is to be configured, you have to decide on the IP−address, FQDN and possible aliases for use in the /etc/hosts file. An example is:

```
<my-IP> myhost.mydomain.org aliases
```

You should made sure that the IP−address is in the private network IP−address range. Valid ranges are:

```
        Class Networks
        A     10.0.0.0
        B     172.16.0.0 through 172.31.0.0
        C     192.168.0.0 through 192.168.255.0
```

A valid IP address could be 192.168.1.1. A valid FQDN for this IP could be www.linuxfromscratch.org

If you aren't going to use a network card, you still need to come up with a FQDN. This is necessary for programs like Sendmail to operate correctly (in fact; Sendmail won't run when it can't determine the FQDN).

If a network card is not going to be configured, a new file `/etc/hosts` is created by running:

```
cat > /etc/hosts << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/hosts (no network card version)

127.0.0.1 www.mydomain.com <value of HOSTNAME> localhost

# End /etc/hosts (no network card version)
EOF
```

If a network card is to be configured, a new file `/etc/hosts` is created by running:

```
cat > /etc/hosts << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/hosts (network card version)

127.0.0.1 localhost.localdomain localhost
192.168.1.1 www.mydomain.org <value of HOSTNAME>

# End /etc/hosts (network card version)
EOF
```

Of course, the 192.168.1.1 and www.mydomain.org have to be changed to your liking (or requirements if assigned an IP−address by a network/system administrator and this machine is planned to be connected to that network).

Creating the ethnet script

This section only applies if a user is going to configure a network card. If not, this section can be skipped.

Create the `/etc/init.d/ethnet` script by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/init.d/ethnet << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/ethnet
#
# Main script by Gerard Beekmans - gerard@linuxfromscratch.org
# GATEWAY check by Jean-François Le Ray - jfleray@club-internet.fr
# "Specify which IF to use to reach default GATEWAY" by
#     Graham Cantin - gcantin@pacbell.net
#


#
# Include the functions declared in the /etc/init.d/functions file
# and the variables from the /etc/sysconfig/network file.
#

source /etc/init.d/functions
source /etc/sysconfig/network

case "$1" in
        start)

#
# Obtain all the network card configuration files
#

        for interface in $(/bin/ls /etc/sysconfig/nic-config/ifcfg* | \
            grep -v ifcfg-lo)
        do
#
# Load the variables from that file
#

            source $interface
#
# If the ONBOOT variable is set to yes, process this file and bring the
# interface up.
#

            if [ "$ONBOOT" == yes ]
            then
                echo -n "Bringing up the $DEVICE interface..."
                /sbin/ifconfig $DEVICE $IP broadcast $BROADCAST \
                    netmask $NETMASK
                evaluate_retval
            fi
        done

#
# If the /etc/sysconfig/network file contains a GATEWAY variable, set
# the default gateway and the interface through which the default
# gateway can be reached.
#

            if [ "$GATEWAY" != "" ]; then
```

```
                echo -n "Setting up routing for $GATEWAY_IF interface..."
                /sbin/route add default gateway $GATEWAY \
                        metric 1 dev $GATEWAY_IF
                evaluate_retval
            fi
                ;;

        stop)

#
# Obtain all the network card configuration files
#

        for interface in $(/bin/ls /etc/sysconfig/nic-config/ifcfg* | \
            grep -v ifcfg-lo)
        do
#
# Load the variables from that file
#

            source $interface
#
# If the ONBOOT variable is set, process the file and bring the
# interface down
#

            if [ $ONBOOT == yes ]
            then
                echo -n "Bringing down the $DEVICE interface..."
                /sbin/ifconfig $DEVICE down
                evaluate_retval
            fi
        done
                ;;

        restart)
                $0 stop
                sleep 1
                $0 start
                ;;
        *)
                echo "Usage: $0 {start|stop|restart}"
                exit 1
                ;;
esac

# End /etc/init.d/ethnet
EOF
```

Adding default gateway to /etc/sysconfig/network

If a default gateway is required to be setup, the following command does that:

```
cat >> /etc/sysconfig/network << "EOF"
GATEWAY=192.168.1.2
GATEWAY_IF=eth0
EOF
```

GATEWAY and GATEWAY_IF need to be changed to match the network setup. GATEWAY contains the

address of the default gateway, and GATEWAY_IF contains the network interface through which that default gateway can be reached.

Creating NIC configuration files

Which interfaces are brought up and down by the ethnet script depends on the files in the /etc/sysconfig/nic−config directory. This directory should contain files in the form of ifcfg−x where x is an identification number (or whatever a user named it).

First the nic−config directory is created by running:

```
mkdir /etc/sysconfig/nic-config
```

Now, new files are created in that directory containing the following. The following command creates a sample file ifcfg−eth0:

```
cat > /etc/sysconfig/nic-config/ifcfg-eth0 << "EOF"
ONBOOT=yes
DEVICE=eth0
IP=192.168.1.1
NETMASK=255.255.255.0
BROADCAST=192.168.1.255
EOF
```

Of course, the values of those four variables have to be changed in every file to match the proper setup. Usually NETMASK and BROADCAST will remain the same, just the DEVICE and IP variables will change per network interface. If the ONBOOT variable is set to yes, the ethnet script will bring it up during boot up of the system. If set to anything else but yes it will be ignored by the ethnet script and thus not brought up.

Setting up symlinks and permissions

These files get the proper permissions and the necessary symlinks are created by running the following commands. If you didn't create the loadkeys and/or setclock scripts, make sure not to type them in the commands below.

A note of caution: all the symlinks (that start with an S or K) have to be of the form Sxxxname where xxx are three digits denoting the order in which the script is executed (the lower the number the sooner it's executed). If you feel a need to use less than three digits, make sure you pad with extra zero's at the beginning. This means, don't use S20mydaemon, but S020mydaemon. And don't use K2otherdaemon, but K002otherdaemon.

```
cd /etc/init.d &&
chmod 754 rc rcS functions checkfs halt loadkeys mountfs reboot &&
chmod 754 sendsignals setclock sysklogd template &&
chmod 754 localnet ethnet &&
cd ../rc0.d &&
ln -sf ../init.d/ethnet K800ethnet &&
ln -sf ../init.d/sysklogd K900sysklogd &&
ln -sf ../init.d/sendsignals S800sendsignals &&
ln -sf ../init.d/mountfs S900mountfs &&
ln -sf ../init.d/halt S999halt &&
cd ../rc6.d &&
ln -sf ../init.d/ethnet K800ethnet &&
ln -sf ../init.d/sysklogd K900sysklogd &&
ln -sf ../init.d/sendsignals S800sendsignals &&
ln -sf ../init.d/mountfs S900mountfs &&
ln -sf ../init.d/reboot S999reboot &&
cd ../rcS.d &&
ln -sf ../init.d/localnet S100localnet &&
ln -sf ../init.d/checkfs S200checkfs &&
ln -sf ../init.d/mountfs S300mountfs &&
ln -sf ../init.d/setclock S400setclock &&
ln -sf ../init.d/loadkeys S500loadkeys &&
cd ../rc1.d &&
ln -sf ../init.d/ethnet K800ethnet &&
ln -sf ../init.d/sysklogd K900sysklogd &&
cd ../rc2.d &&
ln -sf ../init.d/sysklogd S100sysklogd &&
ln -sf ../init.d/ethnet K800ethnet &&
cd ../rc3.d &&
ln -sf ../init.d/sysklogd S100sysklogd &&
ln -sf ../init.d/ethnet S200ethnet &&
cd ../rc4.d &&
ln -sf ../init.d/sysklogd S100sysklogd &&
ln -sf ../init.d/ethnet S200ethnet &&
cd ../rc5.d &&
ln -sf ../init.d/sysklogd S100sysklogd &&
ln -sf ../init.d/ethnet S200ethnet
```

Chapter 8. Making the LFS system bootable

Introduction

This chapter will make LFS bootable. This chapter deals with creating a new fstab file, building a new kernel for the new LFS system and adding the proper entries to LILO so that the LFS system can be selected for booting at the LILO: prompt.

Creating the /etc/fstab file

In order for certain programs to be able to determine where certain partitions are supposed to be mounted by default, the /etc/fstab file is used. Create a new file `/etc/fstab` containing the following:

```
cat > /etc/fstab << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/fstab

# location of filesystem        mount point     fs-type         options

/dev/*LFS-partition device*     /               *fs-type*       defaults 1 1
/dev/*swap-partition device*    swap            swap            defaults 0 0
proc                            /proc           proc            defaults 0 0

# End /etc/fstab
EOF
```

LFS-partition device, ***swap-partition device*** and ***fs-type*** have to be replaced with the appropriate values (/dev/hda2, /dev/hda5 and reiserfs for example).

When adding a reiserfs partition, the **1 1** at the end of the line should be replaced with **0 0**.

For more information on the various fields which are in the fstab file, see **man 5 fstab**.

There are other lines which you may consider adding to your fstab file. One example is the line which you must have if you are using devpts:

```
devpts          /dev/pts        devpts   gid=4,mode=620  0 0
```

Another example is a line to use if you intend to use USB devices:

```
usbdevfs                /proc/bus/usb   usbdevfs defaults        0 0
```

Both of these options will only work if you have the relevant support compiled into your kernel.

Installing a kernel

```
Estimated build time:           Depends on options selected
Estimated required disk space:  Depends on options selected
```

Building the kernel involves a few steps: configuring it and compiling it. There are a few ways to configure the kernel. If you don't like the way this book does it, read the `README` that comes with the kernel source tree, and find out what the other options are.

Something you could do, is take the .config file from your host distribution's kernel source tree and copy it to $LFS/usr/src/linux. This way you don't have to configure the entire kernel from scratch and can use your current values. If you choose to do this, first run the make mrproper command below, then copy the .config file over, then run make menuconfig (make oldconfig may be better in some situations. See the `README` file for more details when to use make oldconfig).

The following commands are run to build the kernel:

```
cd /usr/src/linux &&
make mrproper &&
make menuconfig &&
make dep &&
make bzImage &&
make modules &&
make modules_install &&
cp arch/i386/boot/bzImage /boot/lfskernel &&
cp System.map /boot
```

Note: the arch/i386/boot/bzImage path may vary on different platforms.

Dependencies

Linux−2.4.8 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from th

Making the LFS system bootable

In order to be able to boot the LFS system, we need to update our bootloader. We're assuming that your host system is using Lilo (since that's the most commonly used boot loader at the moment).

We will not be running the lilo program inside chroot. Running lilo inside chroot can have fatal side−effects which render your MBR useless and you'd need a boot disk to be able to start any Linux system (either the host system or the LFS system).

First we'll exit chroot and copy the lfskernel file to the host system:

```
logout
cp $LFS/boot/lfskernel /boot
```

The next step is adding an entry to /etc/lilo.conf so that we can choose LFS when booting the computer:

```
cat >> /etc/lilo.conf << "EOF"
image=/boot/lfskernel
        label=lfs
        root=<partition>
        read-only
EOF
```

<partition> must be replaced with the LFS partition's designation.

Also note that if you are using reiserfs for your root partition, the line **`read−only`** should be changed to **`read−write`**.

Now, update the boot loader by running:

```
/sbin/lilo
```

The last step is synchronizing the host system's lilo configuration files with the LFS system's:

```
cp /etc/lilo.conf $LFS/etc &&
cp <kernel images> $LFS/boot
```

To find out which kernel images files are being used, look at the /etc/lilo.conf file and look for the lines starting with *image*=. If your host system has kernel files in other places than the /boot directory, make sure you update the paths in the $LFS/etc/lilo.conf file so that it does look for them in the /boot directory.

Chapter 9. The End

The End

Well done! You have finished installing your LFS system. It may have been a long process but it was well worth it. We wish you a lot of fun with your new shiny custom built Linux system.

Now would be a good time to strip all debug symbols from the binaries on your LFS system. If you are not a programmer and don't plan on debugging your software, then you will be happy to know that you can reclaim a few tens of megs by removing debug symbols. This process causes no inconvenience other than not being able to debug the software fully anymore, which is not an issue if you don't know how to debug.

Disclaimer: 98% of the people who use the command mentioned below don't experience any problems. But do make a backup of your LFS system before you run this command. There's a slight chance it may backfire on you and render your system unusable (mostly by destroying your kernel modules and dynamic & shared libraries). This is more often caused by typo's than by a problem with the command used.

Having said that, the −−strip−debug option we use to strip is quite harmless under normal circumstances. It doesn't strip anything vital from the files. It also is quite safe to use −−strip−all on regular programs (don't use that on libraries − they will be destroyed) but it's not as safe and the space you gain is not all that much. But if you're tight on disk space every little bit helps, so decide yourself. Please refer to the strip man page for other strip options you can use. The general idea is to not run strip on libraries (other than −−strip−debug) just to be on the safe side.

```
find $LFS/{,usr,usr/local}/{bin,sbin,lib} -type f \
   -exec /usr/bin/strip --strip-debug '{}' ';'
```

It may be a good idea to create the $LFS/etc/lfs−3.1 file. By having this file it is very easy for you (and for us if you are going to ask for help with something at some point) to find out which LFS version you have installed on your system. This can just be a null−byte file by running:

```
touch $LFS/etc/lfs-3.1
```

Get Counted

Want to be counted as an LFS user now that you have finished the book? Head over to http://linuxfromscratch.org/cgi−bin/lfscounter.cgi and register as an LFS user by entering your name and the first LFS version you have used.

Let's reboot into LFS now...

Rebooting the system

Now that all software has been installed, bootscripts have been created, it's time to reboot the computer. Before we reboot let's unmount $LFS/proc and the LFS partition itself by running:

```
umount $LFS/proc &&
umount $LFS
```

And you can reboot your system by running something like:

```
/sbin/shutdown -r now
```

At the LILO: prompt make sure that you tell it to boot *lfs* and not the default entry which will boot your host system again.

After you have rebooted, your LFS system is ready for use and you can start adding your own software.

One final thing you may want to do is run lilo, now that you are booted into LFS. This way you will put the LFS version of LILO in the MBR rather than the one that's there right now from your host system. Depending on how old your host distribution is, the LFS version may have more advanced features you need/could use.

Either way, run the following to make the lilo version installed on LFS active:

```
/sbin/lilo
```

If you are wondering: "Well, where to go now?" you'll be glad to hear that someone has written an LFS hint on the subject at http://hints.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/afterlfs.txt. On a same note, if you are not only newbie to LFS, but also newbie to Linux in general, you may find the newbie hint at http://hints.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/newbie.txt very interesting.

Don't forget there are several LFS mailinglists you can subscribe to if you are in need of help, advice, etc. See Chapter 1 – Mailing lists and archives for more information.

Again, we thank you for using the LFS Book and hope you found this book useful and worth your time.

III. Part III – Appendixes

Table of Contents

A. Package descriptions
B. Dependencies
C. Resources
D. Official download locations

Appendix A. Package descriptions

Introduction

This appendix describes the following aspects of every package that is installed in this book:

- What the package contains.
- What each program from a package does.

The packages are listed in the same order as they are installed in chapter 5 and chapter 6.

Most information about these packages (especially the descriptions of them) come from the man pages from those packages. We are not going to print the entire man page, just the core elements to make it possible to understand what a program does. To get knowledge of all details on a program, we suggest you start by reading the complete man page in addition to this appendix.

Certain packages are documented in more depth than others, because we just happen to know more about certain packages than I know about others. If anything should be added to the following descriptions, please don't hesitate to email the mailing lists. We intend that the list should contain an in−depth description of every package installed, but we can't do it without help.

Please note that currently only what a package does is described and not why it needs to be installed. This may be added later.

Bash

Contents

The Bash package contains the bash program

Description

Bash is the Bourne−Again SHell, which is a widely used command interpreter on Unix systems. Bash is a program that reads from standard input, the keyboard. A user types something and the program will evaluate what he has typed and do something with it, like running a program.

Binutils

Contents

The Binutils package contains the addr2line, as, ar, c++filt, gasp, gprof, ld, nm, objcopy, objdump, ranlib, readelf, size, strings and strip programs

Description

addr2line

addr2line translates program addresses into file names and line numbers. Given an address and an executable, it uses the debugging information in the executable to figure out which file name and line number are associated with a given address.

as

as is primarily intended to assemble the output of the GNU C compiler gcc for use by the linker ld.

ar

The ar program creates, modifies, and extracts from archives. An archive is a single file holding a collection of other files in a structure that makes it possible to retrieve the original individual files (called members of the archive).

c++filt

The C++ language provides function overloading, which means that it is possible to write many functions with the same name (providing each takes parameters of different types). All C++ function names are encoded into a low−level assembly label (this process is known as mangling). The c++filt program does the inverse mapping: it decodes (demangles) low−level names into user−level names so that the linker can keep these overloaded functions from clashing.

gasp

Gasp is the Assembler Macro Preprocessor.

gprof

gprof displays call graph profile data.

ld

ld combines a number of object and archive files, relocates their data and ties up symbol references. Often the last step in building a new compiled program to run is a call to ld.

nm

nm lists the symbols from object files.

objcopy

objcopy utility copies the contents of an object file to another. objcopy uses the GNU BFD Library to read and write the object files. It can write the destination object file in a format different from that of the source object file.

objdump

objdump displays information about one or more object files. The options control what particular information to display. This information is mostly useful to programmers who are working on the compilation tools, as opposed to programmers who just want their program to compile and work.

ranlib

ranlib generates an index to the contents of an archive, and stores it in the archive. The index lists each symbol defined by a member of an archive that is a relocatable object file.

readelf

readelf displays information about elf type binaries.

size

size lists the section sizes −−and the total size−− for each of the object files objfile in its argument list. By default, one line of output is generated for each object file or each module in an archive.

strings

For each file given, strings prints the printable character sequences that are at least 4 characters long (or the number specified with an option to the program) and are followed by an unprintable character. By default, it only prints the strings from the initialized and loaded sections of object files; for other types of files, it prints the strings from the whole file.

strings is mainly useful for determining the contents of non−text files.

strip

strip discards all or specific symbols from object files. The list of object files may include archives. At least one object file must be given. strip modifies the files named in its argument, rather than writing modified copies under different names.

Bzip2

Contents

The Bzip2 packages contains the bunzip2, bzcat, bzip2 and bzip2recover programs.

Description

bunzip2

Bunzip2 decompresses files that are compressed with bzip2.

bzcat

bzcat (or bzip2 −dc) decompresses all specified files to the standard output.

bzip2

bzip2 compresses files using the Burrows−Wheeler block sorting text compression algorithm, and Huffman coding. Compression is generally considerably better than that achieved by more conventional LZ77/LZ78−based compressors, and approaches the performance of the PPM family of statistical compressors.

bzip2recover

bzip2recover recovers data from damaged bzip2 files.

Diffutils

Contents

The Diffutils package contains the cmp, diff, diff3 and sdiff programs.

Description

cmp and diff

cmp and diff both compare two files and report their differences. Both programs have extra options which compare files in different situations.

diff3

The difference between diff and diff3 is that diff compares 2 files, diff3 compares 3 files.

sdiff

sdiff merges two files and interactively outputs the results.

Fileutils

Contents

The Fileutils package contains the chgrp, chmod, chown, cp, dd, df, dir, dircolors, du, install, ln, ls, mkdir, mkfifo, mknod, mv, rm, rmdir, shred, sync, touch and vdir programs.

Description

chgrp

chgrp changes the group ownership of each given file to the named group, which can be either a group name or a numeric group ID.

chmod

chmod changes the permissions of each given file according to mode, which can be either a symbolic representation of changes to make, or an octal number representing the bit pattern for the new permissions.

chown

chown changes the user and/or group ownership of each given file.

cp

cp copies files from one place to another.

dd

dd copies a file (from the standard input to the standard output, by default) with a user−selectable blocksize, while optionally performing conversions on it.

df

df displays the amount of disk space available on the filesystem containing each file name argument. If no file name is given, the space available on all currently mounted filesystems is shown.

dir, ls and vdir

dir and vdir are versions of ls with different default output formats. These programs list each given file or directory name. Directory contents are sorted alphabetically. For ls, files are by default listed in columns, sorted vertically, if the standard output is a terminal; otherwise they are listed one per line. For dir, files are by default listed in columns, sorted vertically. For vdir, files are by default listed in long format.

dircolors

dircolors outputs commands to set the LS_COLOR environment variable. The LS_COLOR variable is use to change the default color scheme used by ls and related utilities.

du

du displays the amount of disk space used by each argument and for each subdirectory of directory arguments.

install

install copies files and sets their permission modes and, if possible, their owner and group.

ln

ln makes hard or soft (symbolic) links between files.

mkdir

mkdir creates directories with a given name.

mkfifo

mkfifo creates a FIFO with each given name.

mknod

mknod creates a FIFO, character special file, or block special file with the given file name.

mv

mv moves files from one directory to another or renames files, depending on the arguments given to mv.

rm

rm removes files or directories.

rmdir

rmdir removes directories, if they are empty.

shred

shred deletes a file securely, overwriting it first so that its contents can't be recovered.

sync

sync forces changed blocks to disk and updates the super block.

touch

touch changes the access and modification times of each given file to the current time. Files that do not exist are created empty.

GCC

Contents

The GCC package contains compilers, preprocessors and the GNU C++ Library.

Description

Compiler

A compiler translates source code in text format to a format that a computer understands. After a source code file is compiled into an object file, a linker will create an executable file from one or more of these compiler generated object files.

Preprocessor

A preprocessor pre−processes a source file, such as including the contents of header files into the source file. It's a good idea to not do this manually to save a lot of time. Someone just inserts a line like #include <filename>. The preprocessor inserts the contents of that file into the source file. That's one of the things a preprocessor does.

C++ Library

The C++ library is used by C++ programs. The C++ library contains functions that are frequently used in C++ programs. This way the programmer doesn't have to write certain functions (such as writing a string of text to the screen) from scratch every time he creates a program.

Grep

Contents

The grep package contains the egrep, fgrep and grep programs.

Description

egrep

egrep prints lines from files matching an extended regular expression pattern.

fgrep

fgrep prints lines from files matching a list of fixed strings, separated by newlines, any of which is to be matched.

grep

grep prints lines from files matching a basic regular expression pattern.

Gzip

Contents

The Gzip package contains the compress, gunzip, gzexe, gzip, uncompress, zcat, zcmp, zdiff, zforce, zgrep, zmore and znew programs.

Description

gunzip, uncompress

gunzip and uncompress decompress files which are compressed with gzip.

gzexe

gzexe allows you to compress executables in place and have them automatically uncompress and execute when they are run (at a penalty in performance).

gzip

gzip reduces the size of the named files using Lempel−Ziv coding (LZ77).

zcat

zcat uncompresses either a list of files on the command line or its standard input and writes the uncompressed data on standard output

zcmp

zcmp invokes the cmp program on compressed files.

zdiff

zdiff invokes the diff program on compressed files.

zforce

zforce forces a .gz extension on all gzip files so that gzip will not compress them twice. This can be useful for files with names truncated after a file transfer.

zgrep

zgrep invokes the grep program on compressed files.

zmore

zmore is a filter which allows examination of compressed or plain text files one screen at a time on a soft−copy terminal (similar to the more program).

znew

znew re−compresses files from .Z (compress) format to .gz (gzip) format.

Linux kernel

Contents

The Linux kernel package contains the Linux kernel.

Description

The Linux kernel is at the core of every Linux system. It's what makes Linux tick. When a computer is turned on and boots a Linux system, the very first piece of Linux software that gets loaded is the kernel. The kernel initializes the system's hardware components such as serial ports, parallel ports, sound cards, network cards, IDE controllers, SCSI controllers and a lot more. In a nutshell the kernel makes the hardware available so that the software can run.

Make

Contents

The Make package contains the make program.

Description

make determines automatically which pieces of a large program need to be recompiled, and issues the commands to recompile them.

Mawk

Contents

The Mawk package contains the mawk program.

Description

mawk

Mawk is an interpreter for the AWK Programming Language. The AWK language is useful for manipulation of data files, text retrieval and processing, and for prototyping and experimenting with algorithms.

Patch

Contents

The Patch package contains the patch program.

Description

The patch program modifies a file according to a patch file. A patch file usually is a list created by the diff program that contains instructions on how an original file needs to be modified. Patch is used a lot for source code patches since it saves time and space. Imagine a package that is 1MB in size. The next version of that package only has changes in two files of the first version. It can be shipped as an entirely new package of 1MB or just as a patch file of 1KB which will update the first version to make it identical to the second version. So if the first version was downloaded already, a patch file avoids a second large download.

Sed

Contents

The Sed package contains the sed program.

Description

sed is a stream editor. A stream editor is used to perform basic text transformations on an input stream (a file or input from a pipeline).

Sh−utils

Contents

The Sh−utils package contains the basename, chroot, date, dirname, echo, env, expr, factor, false, groups, hostid, hostname, id, logname, nice, nohup, pathchk, pinky, printenv, printf, pwd, seq, sleep, stty, su, tee, test, true, tty, uname, uptime, users, who, whoami and yes programs.

Description

basename

basename strips directory and suffixes from filenames.

chroot

chroot runs a command or interactive shell with special root directory.

date

date displays the current time in a specified format, or sets the system date.

dirname

dirname strips non−directory suffixes from file name.

echo

echo displays a line of text.

env

env runs a program in a modified environment.

expr

expr evaluates expressions.

factor

factor prints the prime factors of all specified integer numbers.

false

false always exits with a status code indicating failure.

groups

groups prints the groups a user is in.

hostid

hostid prints the numeric identifier (in hexadecimal) for the current host.

hostname

hostname sets or prints the name of the current host system

id

id prints the real and effective UIDs and GIDs of a user or the current user.

logname

logname prints the current user's login name.

nice

nice runs a program with modified scheduling priority.

nohup

nohup runs a command immune to hangups, with output to a non−tty

pathchk

pathchk checks whether file names are valid or portable.

pinky

pinky is a lightweight finger utility which retrieves information about a certain user

printenv

printenv prints all or part of the environment.

printf

printf formats and prints data (the same as the printf C function).

pwd

pwd prints the name of the current/working directory

seq

seq prints numbers in a certain range with a certain increment.

sleep

sleep delays for a specified amount of time.

stty

stty changes and prints terminal line settings.

su

su runs a shell with substitute user and group IDs

tee

tee reads from standard input and writes to standard output and files.

test

test checks file types and compares values.

true

True always exits with a status code indicating success.

tty

tty prints the file name of the terminal connected to standard input.

uname

uname prints system information.

uptime

uptime tells how long the system has been running.

users

users prints the user names of users currently logged in to the current host.

who

who shows who is logged on.

whoami

whoami prints the user's effective userid.

yes

yes outputs a string repeatedly until killed.

Tar

Contents

The tar package contains the rmt and tar programs.

Description

rmt

rmt is a program used by the remote dump and restore programs in manipulating a magnetic tape drive through an interprocess communication connection.

tar

tar is an archiving program designed to store and extract files from an archive file known as a tar file.

Texinfo

Contents

The Texinfo package contains the info, install−info, makeinfo, texi2dvi and texindex programs

Description

info

The info program reads Info documents, usually contained in the /usr/doc/info directory. Info documents are like man(ual) pages, but they tend to be more in depth than just explaining the options to a program.

install−info

The install−info program updates the info entries. When the info program is run a list with available topics (ie: available info documents) will be presented. The install−info program is used to maintain this list of available topics. If info files are removed manually, it is also necessary to delete the topic in the index file as well. This program is used for that. It also works the other way around when info documents are added.

makeinfo

The makeinfo program translates Texinfo source documents into various formats. Available formats are: info files, plain text and HTML.

texi2dvi

The texi2dvi program prints Texinfo documents

texindex

The texindex program is used to sort Texinfo index files.

Textutils

Contents

The Textutils package contains the cat, cksum, comm, csplit, cut, expand, fmt, fold, head, join, md5sum, nl, od, paste, pr, ptx, sort, split, sum, tac, tail, tr, tsort, unexpand, uniq and wc programs.

Description

cat

cat concatenates file(s) or standard input to standard output.

cksum

cksum prints CRC checksum and byte counts of each specified file.

comm

comm compares two sorted files line by line.

csplit

csplit outputs pieces of a file separated by (a) pattern(s) to files xx01, xx02, ..., and outputs byte counts of each piece to standard output.

cut

cut prints selected parts of lines from specified files to standard output.

expand

expand converts tabs in files to spaces, writing to standard output.

fmt

fmt reformats each paragraph in the specified file(s), writing to standard output.

fold

fold wraps input lines in each specified file (standard input by default), writing to standard output.

head

Print first xx (10 by default) lines of each specified file to standard output.

join

join joins lines of two files on a common field.

md5sum

md5sum prints or checks MD5 checksums.

nl

nl writes each specified file to standard output, with line numbers added.

od

od writes an unambiguous representation, octal bytes by default, of a specified file to standard output.

paste

paste writes lines consisting of the sequentially corresponding lines from each specified file, separated by TABs, to standard output.

pr

pr paginates or columnates files for printing.

ptx

ptx produces a permuted index of file contents.

sort

sort writes sorted concatenation of files to standard output.

split

split outputs fixed−size pieces of an input file to PREFIXaa, PREFIXab, ...

sum

sum prints checksum and block counts for each specified file.

tac

tac writes each specified file to standard output, last line first.

tail

tail print the last xx (10 by default) lines of each specified file to standard output.

tr

tr translates, squeezes, and/or deletes characters from standard input, writing to standard output.

tsort

tsort writes totally ordered lists consistent with the partial ordering in specified files.

unexpand

unexpand converts spaces in each file to tabs, writing to standard output.

uniq

Uniq removes duplicate lines from a sorted file.

wc

wc prints line, word, and byte counts for each specified file, and a total line if more than one file is specified.

Glibc

Contents

The Glibc package contains the GNU C Library.

Description

The C Library is a collection of commonly used functions in programs. This way a programmer doesn't need to create his own functions for every single task. The most common things like writing a string to the screen are already present and at the disposal of the programmer.

The C library (actually almost every library) come in two flavors: dynamic ones and static ones. In short when a program uses a static C library, the code from the C library will be copied into the executable file. When a program uses a dynamic library, that executable will not contain the code from the C library, but instead a routine that loads the functions from the library at the time the program is run. This means a significant decrease in the file size of a program. The documentation that comes with the C Library describes this in more detail, as it is too complicated to explain here in one or two lines.

MAKEDEV

Contents

The MAKEDEV package contains the MAKEDEV script.

Description

MAKEDEV is a script that can help in creating the necessary static device files that usually reside in the /dev directory.

Man−pages

Contents

The Man−pages package contains various manual pages that don't come with the packages.

Description

Examples of provided manual pages are the manual pages describing all the C and C++ functions, few important /dev/ files and more.

Findutils

Contents

The Findutils package contains the bigram, code, find, frcode, locate, updatedb and xargs programs.

Description

bigram

bigram is used together with code to produce older−style locate databases. To learn more about these last three programs, read the locatedb.5 manual page.

code

code is the ancestor of frcode. It was used in older−style locate databases.

find

The find program searches for files in a directory hierarchy which match a certain criteria. If no criteria is given, it lists all files in the current directory and its subdirectories.

frcode

updatedb runs a program called frcode to compress the list of file names using front−compression, which reduces the database size by a factor of 4 to 5.

locate

Locate scans a database which contain all files and directories on a filesystem. This program lists the files and directories in this database matching a certain criteria. If a user is looking for a file this program will scan the database and tell him exactly where the files he requested are located. This only makes sense if the locate database is fairly up−to−date else it will provide out−of−date information.

updatedb

The updatedb program updates the locate database. It scans the entire file system (including other file system that are currently mounted unless it is told not to do so) and puts every directory and file it finds into the database that's used by the locate program which retrieves this information. It's good practice to update this database once a day to have it up−to−date whenever it is needed.

xargs

The xargs command applies a command to a list of files. If there is a need to perform the same command on multiple files, a file can be created that contains all these files (one per line) and use xargs to perform that command on the list.

Ncurses

Contents

The Ncurses package contains the ncurses, panel, menu and form libraries. It also contains the clear, infocmp, tic, toe, tput and tset programs.

Description

The libraries

The libraries that make up the Ncurses library are used to display text (often in a fancy way) on the screen. An example where ncurses is used is in the kernel's "make menuconfig" process. The libraries contain routines to create panels, menu's, form and general text display routines.

clear

The clear program clears the screen if this is possible. It looks in the environment for the terminal type and then in the terminfo database to figure out how to clear the screen.

infocmp

The infocmp program can be used to compare a binary terminfo entry with other terminfo entries, rewrite a terminfo description to take advantage of the use= terminfo field, or print out a terminfo description from the binary file (term) in a variety of formats (the opposite of what tic does).

tic

Tic is the terminfo entry−description compiler. The program translates a terminfo file from source format into the binary format for use with the ncurses library routines. Terminfo files contain information about the capabilities of a terminal.

toe

The toe program lists all available terminal types by primary name with descriptions.

tput

The tput program uses the terminfo database to make the values of terminal−dependent capabilities and information available to the shell, to initialize or reset the terminal, or return the long name of the requested terminal type.

tset

The Tset program initializes terminals so they can be used, but it's not widely used anymore. It's provided for 4.4BSD compatibility.

Vim

Contents

The Vim package contains the ex, gview, gvim, rgview, rgvim, rview, rvim, view, vim, vimtutor and xxd programs.

Description

ex

ex starts vim in Ex mode.

gview

gview is the GUI version of view.

gvim

gvim is the GUI version of vim.

rgview

rgview is the GUI version of rview.

rgvim

rgvim is the GUI version of rvim.

rview

rview is a restricted version of view. No shell commands can be started and Vim can't be suspended.

rvim

rvim is the restricted version of vim. No shell commands can be started and Vim can't be suspended.

view

view starts vim in read−only mode.

vim

vim starts vim in the normal, default way.

vimtutor

vimtutor starts the Vim tutor.

xxd

xxd makes a hexdump or does the reverse.

Bison

Contents

The Bison package contains the bison program.

Description

Bison is a parser generator, a replacement for YACC. YACC stands for Yet Another Compiler Compiler. What is Bison then? It is a program that generates a program that analyzes the structure of a text file. Instead of writing the actual program a user specifies how things should be connected and with those rules a program is constructed that analyzes the text file.

There are a lot of examples where structure is needed and one of them is the calculator.

Given the string :

```
1 + 2 * 3
```

A human can easily come to the result 7. Why? Because of the structure. Our brain knows how to interpret the string. The computer doesn't know that and Bison is a tool to help it understand by presenting the string in the following way to the compiler:

```
+       / \       * 1       / \       2 3
```

Starting at the bottom of a tree and coming across the numbers 2 and 3 which are joined by the multiplication symbol, the computer multiplies 2 and 3. The result of that multiplication is remembered and the next thing that the computer sees is the result of 2*3 and the number 1 which are joined by the add symbol. Adding 1 to the previous result makes 7. In calculating the most complex calculations can be broken down in this tree format and the computer just starts at the bottom and works its way up to the top and comes with the correct answer. Of course, Bison isn't only used for calculators alone.

Less

Contents

The Less package contains the less program

Description

The less program is a file pager (or text viewer). It displays the contents of a file with the ability to scroll. Less is an improvement on the common pager called "more". Less has the ability to scroll backwards through files as well and it doesn't need to read the entire file when it starts, which makes it faster when reading large files.

Groff

Contents

The Groff packages contains the addftinfo, afmtodit, eqn, grodvi, groff, grog, grohtml, grolj4, grops, grotty, hpftodit, indxbib, lkbib, lookbib, neqn, nroff, pfbtops, pic, psbb, refer, soelim, tbl, tfmtodit and troff programs.

Description

addftinfo

addftinfo reads a troff font file and adds some additional font−metric information that is used by the groff system.

afmtodit

afmtodit creates a font file for use with groff and grops.

eqn

eqn compiles descriptions of equations embedded within troff input files into commands that are understood by troff.

grodvi

grodvi is a driver for groff that produces TeX dvi format.

groff

groff is a front−end to the groff document formatting system. Normally it runs the troff program and a post−processor appropriate for the selected device.

grog

grog reads files and guesses which of the groff options −e, −man, −me, −mm, −ms, −p, −s, and −t are required for printing files, and prints the groff command including those options on the standard output.

grohtml

grohtml translates the output of GNU troff to html

grolj4

grolj4 is a driver for groff that produces output in PCL5 format suitable for an HP Laserjet 4 printer.

grops

grops translates the output of GNU troff to Postscript.

grotty

grotty translates the output of GNU troff into a form suitable for typewriter−like devices.

hpftodit

hpftodit creates a font file for use with groff −Tlj4 from an HP tagged font metric file.

indxbib

indxbib makes an inverted index for the bibliographic databases a specified file for use with refer, lookbib, and lkbib.

lkbib

lkbib searches bibliographic databases for references that contain specified keys and prints any references found on the standard output.

lookbib

lookbib prints a prompt on the standard error (unless the standard input is not a terminal), reads from the standard input a line containing a set of keywords, searches the bibliographic databases in a specified file for references containing those keywords, prints any references found on the standard output, and repeats this process until the end of input.

neqn

The neqn script formats equations for ascii output.

nroff

The nroff script emulates the nroff command using groff.

pfbtops

pfbtops translates a Postscript font in .pfb format to ASCII.

pic

pic compiles descriptions of pictures embedded within troff or TeX input files into commands that are understood by TeX or troff.

psbb

psbb reads a file which should be a Postscript document conforming to the Document Structuring conventions and looks for a %%BoundingBox comment.

refer

refer copies the contents of a file to the standard output, except that lines between .[and .] are interpreted as citations, and lines between .R1 and .R2 are interpreted as commands about how citations are to be processed.

soelim

soelim reads files and replaces lines of the form *.so file* by the contents of *file*.

tbl

tbl compiles descriptions of tables embedded within troff input files into commands that are understood by troff.

tfmtodit

tfmtodit creates a font file for use with **`groff -Tdvi`**

troff

troff is highly compatible with Unix troff. Usually it should be invoked using the groff command, which will also run preprocessors and post−processors in the appropriate order and with the appropriate options.

Man

Contents

The Man package contains the apropos, makewhatis, man and whatis programs.

Description

apropos

apropos searches a set of database files containing short descriptions of system commands for keywords and displays the result on the standard output.

makewhatis

makewhatis reads all the manual pages contained in given sections of manpath or the pre−formatted pages contained in the given sections of catpath. For each page, it writes a line in the whatis database; each line consists of the name of the page and a short description, separated by a dash. The description is extracted using the content of the NAME section of the manual page.

man

man formats and displays the on−line manual pages.

whatis

whatis searches a set of database files containing short descriptions of system commands for keywords and displays the result on the standard output. Only complete word matches are displayed.

Perl

Contents

The Perl package contains Perl – Practical Extraction and Report Language

Description

Perl combines the features and capabilities of C, awk, sed and sh into one powerful programming language.

M4

Contents

The M4 package contains the M4 processor

Description

M4 is a macro processor. It copies input to output expanding macros as it goes. Macros are either built−in or user−defined and can take any number of arguments. Besides just doing macro expansion m4 has built−in functions for including named files, running UNIX commands, doing integer arithmetic, manipulating text in various ways, recursion, etc. M4 can be used either as a front−end to a compiler or as a macro processor in its own right.

Autoconf

Contents

The Autoconf package contains the autoconf, autoheader, autoreconf, autoscan, autoupdate and ifnames programs

Description

autoconf

Autoconf is a tool for producing shell scripts that automatically configure software source code packages to adapt to many kinds of UNIX−like systems. The configuration scripts produced by Autoconf are independent of Autoconf when they are run, so their users do not need to have Autoconf.

autoheader

The autoheader program can create a template file of C #define statements for configure to use

autoreconf

If there are a lot of Autoconf−generated configure scripts, the autoreconf program can save some work. It runs autoconf (and autoheader, where appropriate) repeatedly to remake the Autoconf configure scripts and configuration header templates in the directory tree rooted at the current directory.

autoscan

The autoscan program can help to create a configure.in file for a software package. autoscan examines source files in the directory tree rooted at a directory given as a command line argument, or the current directory if none is given. It searches the source files for common portability problems and creates a file configure.scan which is a preliminary configure.in for that package.

autoupdate

The autoupdate program updates a configure.in file that calls Autoconf macros by their old names to use the current macro names.

ifnames

ifnames can help when writing a configure.in for a software package. It prints the identifiers that the package already uses in C preprocessor conditionals. If a package has already been set up to have some portability, this program can help to figure out what its configure needs to check for. It may help fill in some gaps in a configure.in generated by autoscan.

Automake

Contents

The Automake package contains the aclocal and automake programs

Description

aclocal

Automake includes a number of Autoconf macros which can be used in packages; some of them are actually required by Automake in certain situations. These macros must be defined in the aclocal.m4−file; otherwise they will not be seen by autoconf.

The aclocal program will automatically generate aclocal.m4 files based on the contents of configure.in. This provides a convenient way to get Automake−provided macros, without having to search around. Also, the aclocal mechanism is extensible for use by other packages.

automake

To create all the Makefile.in's for a package, run the automake program in the top level directory, with no arguments. automake will automatically find each appropriate Makefile.am (by scanning configure.in) and generate the corresponding Makefile.in.

Flex

Contents

The Flex package contains the flex program

Description

Flex is a tool for generating programs which recognize patterns in text. Pattern recognition is very useful in many applications. A user sets up rules what to look for and flex will make a program that looks for those patterns. The reason people use flex is that it is much easier to sets up rules for what to look for than to write the actual program that finds the text.

File

Contents

The File package contains the file program.

Description

File tests each specified file in an attempt to classify it. There are three sets of tests, performed in this order: filesystem tests, magic number tests, and language tests. The first test that succeeds causes the file type to be printed.

Libtool

Contents

The Libtool package contains the libtool and libtoolize programs. It also contains the ltdl library.

Description

libtool

Libtool provides generalized library−building support services.

libtoolize

libtoolize provides a standard way to add libtool support to a package.

ltdl library

Libtool provides a small library, called `libltdl', that aims at hiding the various difficulties of dlopening libraries from programmers.

Bin86

Contents

The Bin86 contains the as86, as86_encap, ld86, objdump86, nm86 and size86 programs.

Description

as86

as86 is an assembler for the 8086...80386 processors.

as86_encap

as86_encap is a shell script to call as86 and convert the created binary into a C file prog.v to be included in or linked with programs like boot block installers.

ld86

ld86 understands only the object files produced by the as86 assembler, it can link them into either an impure or a separate I&D executable.

objdump86

No description available.

nm86

No description available.

size86

No description available.

Ed

Contents

The Ed package contains the ed program.

Description

Ed is a line−oriented text editor. It is used to create, display, modify and otherwise manipulate text files.

Gettext

Contents

The gettext package contains the gettext, gettextize, msgcmp, msgcomm, msgfmt, msgmerge, msgunfmt and xgettext programs.

Description

gettext

The gettext package is used for internationalization (also known as i18n) and for localization (also known as l10n). Programs can be compiled with Native Language Support (NLS) which enable them to output messages in the users native language rather than in the default English language.

gettextize

No description is currently available for this program.

msgcmp

No description is currently available for this program.

msgcomm

No description is currently available for this program.

msgfmt

No description is currently available for this program.

msgmerge

No description is currently available for this program.

msgunfmt

No description is currently available for this program.

xgettext

No description is currently available for this program.

Kbd

Contents

The Kbd package contains the chvt, deallocvt, dumpkeys, fgconsole, getkeycodes, kbd_mode, kbdrate, loadkeys, loadunimap, mapscrn, psfxtable, resizecons, screendump, setfont, setkeycodes, setleds, setmetamode, setvesablank, showfont, showkey, unicode_start, and unicode_stop programs. There are some other programs that don't get installed by default, as they are very optional. Take a look at the Kbd package contents if you have trouble with your console.

Description

chvt

chvt changes foreground virtual terminal.

deallocvt

deallocvt deallocates unused virtual terminals.

dumpkeys

dumpkeys dumps keyboard translation tables.

fgconsole

fgconsole prints the number of the active virtual terminal.

getkeycodes

getkeycodes prints the kernel scancode−to−keycode mapping table.

kbd_mode

kbd_mode reports or sets the keyboard mode.

kbdrate

kbdrate sets the keyboard repeat and delay rates.

loadkeys

loadkeys loads keyboard translation tables.

loadunimap

loadunimap loads the kernel unicode−to−font mapping table.

mapscrn

mapscrn loads a user defined output character mapping table into the console driver. Note that it is obsolete and that its features are built into setfont.

psfxtable

psfxtable is a tool for handling Unicode character tables for console fonts.

resizecons

resizecons changes the kernel idea of the console size.

screendump

A screen shot utility for the console.

setfont

This lets you change the EGA/VGA fonts in console.

setkeycodes

setkeycodes loads kernel scancode−to−keycode mapping table entries.

setleds

setleds sets the keyboard LEDs. Many people find it useful to have numlock enabled by default, and it is by using this program that you can achieve this.

setmetamode

setmetamode defines the keyboard meta key handling.

setvesablank

This lets you fiddle with the built−in hardware screensaver (not toasters, only a blank screen).

showfont

showfont displays data about a font. The information shown includes font information, font properties, character metrics, and character bitmaps.

showkey

showkey examines the scancodes and keycodes sent by the keyboard.

unicode_start

unicode_start puts the console in Unicode mode.

unicode_stop

unicode_stop reverts keyboard and console from unicode mode.

E2fsprogs

Contents

The e2fsprogs package contains the badblocks, chattr, debugfs, dumpe2fs, e2fsck, e2label, fsck, fsck.ext2, lsattr, mke2fs, mkfs.ext2, mklost+found, tune2fs and uuidgen programs.

Description

badblocks

badblocks is used to search for bad blocks on a device (usually a disk partition).

chattr

chattr changes the file attributes on a Linux second extended file system.

debugfs

The debugfs program is a file system debugger. It can be used to examine and change the state of an ext2 file system.

dumpe2fs

dumpe2fs prints the super block and blocks group information for the filesystem present on a specified device.

e2fsck and fsck.ext2

e2fsck is used to check a Linux second extended file system. fsck.ext2 does the same as e2fsck.

e2label

e2label will display or change the filesystem label on the ext2 filesystem located on the specified device.

fsck

fsck is used to check and optionally repair a Linux file system.

lsattr

lsattr lists the file attributes on a second extended file system.

mke2fs and mkfs.ext2

mke2fs is used to create a Linux second extended file system on a device (usually a disk partition). mkfs.ext2 does the same as mke2fs.

mklost+found

mklost+found is used to create a lost+found directory in the current working directory on a Linux second extended file system. mklost+found pre−allocates disk blocks to the directory to make it usable by e2fsck.

tune2fs

tune2fs adjusts tunable filesystem parameters on a Linux second extended filesystem.

uuidgen

The uuidgen program creates a new universally unique identifier (UUID) using the libuuid library. The new UUID can reasonably be considered unique among all UUIDs created on the local system, and among UUIDs created on other systems in the past and in the future.

Lilo

Contents

The Lilo package contains the lilo program.

Description

lilo installs the Linux boot loader which is used to start a Linux system.

Modutils

Contents

The Modutils package contains the depmod, genksyms, insmod, insmod_ksymoops_clean, kerneld, kernelversion, ksyms, lsmod, modinfo, modprobe and rmmod programs.

Description

depmod

depmod handles dependency descriptions for loadable kernel modules.

genksyms

genksyms reads (on standard input) the output from gcc −E source.c and generates a file containing version information.

insmod

insmod installs a loadable module in the running kernel.

insmod_ksymoops_clean

insmod_ksymoops_clean deletes saved ksyms and modules not accessed in 2 days.

kerneld

kerneld performs kernel action in user space (such as on−demand loading of modules)

kernelversion

kernelversion reports the major version of the running kernel.

ksyms

ksyms displays exported kernel symbols.

lsmod

lsmod shows information about all loaded modules.

modinfo

modinfo examines an object file associated with a kernel module and displays any information that it can glean.

modprobe

Modprobe uses a Makefile−like dependency file, created by depmod, to automatically load the relevant module(s) from the set of modules available in predefined directory trees.

rmmod

rmmod unloads loadable modules from the running kernel.

Procinfo

Contents

The Procinfo package contains the procinfo program.

Description

procinfo gathers some system data from the /proc directory and prints it nicely formatted on the standard output device.

Procps

Contents

The Procps package contains the free, kill, oldps, ps, skill, snice, sysctl, tload, top, uptime, vmstat, w and watch programs.

Description

free

free displays the total amount of free and used physical and swap memory in the system, as well as the shared memory and buffers used by the kernel.

kill

kills sends signals to processes.

oldps and ps

ps gives a snapshot of the current processes.

skill

skill sends signals to process matching a criteria.

snice

snice changes the scheduling priority for process matching a criteria.

sysctl

sysctl modifies kernel parameters at runtime.

tload

tload prints a graph of the current system load average to the specified tty (or the tty of the tload process if none is specified).

top

top provides an ongoing look at processor activity in real time.

uptime

uptime gives a one line display of the following information: the current time, how long the system has been

running, how many users are currently logged on, and the system load averages for the past 1, 5, and 15 minutes.

vmstat

vmstat reports information about processes, memory, paging, block IO, traps, and cpu activity.

w

w displays information about the users currently on the machine, and their processes.

watch

watch runs command repeatedly, displaying its output (the first screen full).

Psmisc

Contents

The Psmisc package contains the fuser, killall, pidof and pstree programs.

Description

fuser

fuser displays the PIDs of processes using the specified files or file systems.

killall

killall sends a signal to all processes running any of the specified commands.

pidof

Pidof finds the process id's (pids) of the named programs and prints those id's on standard output.

pstree

pstree shows running processes as a tree.

Reiserfsprogs

Contents

The reiserfsprogs package contains the debugreiserfs, mkreiserfs, reiserfsck, resize_reiserfs and unpack programs.

Description

debugreiserfs

debugreiserfs can sometimes help to solve problems with reiserfs filesystems. If it is called without options it prints the super block of any reiserfs filesystem found on the device.

mkreiserfs

mkreiserfs creates a reiserfs file system.

reiserfsck

reiserfsck checks a reiserfs file system.

resize_reiserfs

resize_reiserfs is used to resize an unmounted reiserfs file system

unpack

No description is currently available for unpack.

Shadow Password Suite

Contents

The Shadow Password Suite contains the chage, chfn, chpasswd, chsh, dpasswd, expiry, faillog, gpasswd, groupadd, groupdel, groupmod, grpck, grpconv, grpunconv, lastlog, login, newgrp, passwd, sg, su, logoutd, mkpasswd, newusers, pwck, pwconv, pwunconv, useradd, userdel, usermod, vigr and vipw programs.

Description

chage

chage changes the number of days between password changes and the date of the last password change.

chfn

chfn changes user full name, office number, office extension, and home phone number information for a user's account.

chpasswd

chpasswd reads a file of user name and password pairs from standard input and uses this information to update a group of existing users.

chsh

chsh changes the user login shell.

dpasswd

dpasswd adds, deletes, and updates dial−up passwords for user login shells.

expiry

Checks and enforces password expiration policy.

faillog

faillog formats the contents of the failure log,/var/log/faillog, and maintains failure counts and limits.

gpasswd

gpasswd is used to administer the /etc/group file

groupadd

The groupadd command creates a new group account using the values specified on the command line and the default values from the system.

groupdel

The groupdel command modifies the system account files, deleting all entries that refer to group.

groupmod

The groupmod command modifies the system account files to reflect the changes that are specified on the command line.

grpck

grpck verifies the integrity of the system authentication information.

grpconv

grpunconv converts to shadow group files from normal group files.

grpunconv

grpunconv converts from shadow group files to normal group files.

lastlog

lastlog formats and prints the contents of the last login log, /var/log/lastlog. The login−name, port, and last login time will be printed.

login

login is used to establish a new session with the system.

newgrp

newgrp is used to change the current group ID during a login session.

passwd

passwd changes passwords for user and group accounts.

sg

sg executes command as a different group ID.

su

Change the effective user id and group id to that of a user. This replaces the su programs that's installed from the Shellutils package.

logoutd

logoutd enforces the login time and port restrictions specified in /etc/porttime.

mkpasswd

mkpasswd reads a file in the format given by the flags and converts it to the corresponding database file format.

newusers

newusers reads a file of user name and clear text password pairs and uses this information to update a group of existing users or to create new users.

pwck

pwck verifies the integrity of the system authentication information.

pwconv

pwconv converts to shadow passwd files from normal passwd files.

pwunconv

pwunconv converts from shadow passwd files to normal files.

useradd

useradd creates a new user or update default new user information.

userdel

userdel modifies the system account files, deleting all entries that refer to a specified login name.

usermod

usermod modifies the system account files to reflect the changes that are specified on the command line.

vipw and vigr

vipw and vigr will edit the files /etc/passwd and /etc/group, respectively. With the −s flag, they will edit the shadow versions of those files, /etc/shadow and /etc/gshadow, respectively.

Sysklogd

Contents

The Sysklogd package contains the klogd and syslogd programs.

Description

klogd

klogd is a system daemon which intercepts and logs Linux kernel messages.

syslogd

Syslogd provides a kind of logging that many modern programs use. Every logged message contains at least a time and a hostname field, normally a program name field, too, but that depends on how trusty the logging program is.

Sysvinit

Contents

The Sysvinit package contains the halt, init, killall5, last, lastb, mesg, pidof, poweroff, reboot, runlevel, shutdown, sulogin, telinit, utmpdump, wall,

Description

halt

Halt notes that the system is being brought down in the file /var/log/wtmp, and then either tells the kernel to halt, reboot or poweroff the system. If halt or reboot is called when the system is not in runlevel 0 or 6, shutdown will be invoked instead (with the flag –h or –r).

init

Init is the parent of all processes. Its primary role is to create processes from a script stored in the file /etc/inittab. This file usually has entries which cause init to spawn gettys on each line that users can log in. It also controls autonomous processes required by any particular system.

killall5

killall5 is the SystemV killall command. It sends a signal to all processes except the processes in its own session, so it won't kill the shell that is running the script it was called from.

last

last searches back through the file /var/log/wtmp (or the file designated by the –f flag) and displays a list of all users logged in (and out) since that file was created.

lastb

lastb is the same as last, except that by default it shows a log of the file /var/log/btmp, which contains all the bad login attempts.

mesg

Mesg controls the access to the users terminal by others. It's typically used to allow or disallow other users to write to his terminal.

pidof

Pidof finds the process id's (pids) of the named programs and prints those id's on standard output.

poweroff

poweroff is equivalent to shutdown −h −p now. It halts the computer and switches off the computer (when using an APM compliant BIOS and APM is enabled in the kernel).

reboot

reboot is equivalent to shutdown −r now. It reboots the computer.

runlevel

Runlevel reads the system utmp file (typically /var/run/utmp) to locate the runlevel record, and then prints the previous and current system runlevel on its standard output, separated by a single space.

shutdown

shutdown brings the system down in a secure way. All logged−in users are notified that the system is going down, and login is blocked.

sulogin

sulogin is invoked by init when the system goes into single user mode (this is done through an entry in /etc/inittab). Init also tries to execute sulogin when it is passed the −b flag from the boot loader (eg, LILO).

telinit

telinit sends appropriate signals to init, telling it which runlevel to change to.

utmpdump

utmpdumps prints the content of a file (usually /var/run/utmp) on standard output in a user friendly format.

wall

Wall sends a message to everybody logged in with their mesg permission set to yes.

Util Linux

Contents

The Util−linux package contains the agetty, arch, blockdev, cal, cfdisk, chkdupexe, col, colcrt, colrm, column, ctrlaltdel, cytune, ddate, dmesg, elvtune, fdformat, fdisk, fsck.minix, getopt, hexdump, hwclock, ipcrm, ipcs, kill, logger, look, losetup, mcookie, mkfs, mkfs.bfs, mkfs.minix, mkswap, more, mount, namei, umount, ramsize, rdev, readprofile, rename, renice, rev, rootflags, script, setfdprm, setsid, setterm, sfdisk, swapdev, swapoff, swapon, tunelp, ul, vidmode, whereis, and write programs.

Description

agetty

agetty opens a tty port, prompts for a login name and invokes the /bin/login command.

arch

arch prints the machine architecture.

blockdev

blockdev allows to call block device ioctls from the command line

cal

cal displays a simple calender.

cfdisk

cfdisk is an libncurses based disk partition table manipulator.

chkdupexe

chkdupexe finds duplicate executables.

col

col filters reverse line feeds from input.

colcrt

colcrt filters nroff output for CRT previewing.

colrm

colrm removes columns from a file.

column

column columnates lists.

ctrlaltdel

ctrlaltdel sets the function of the CTRL+ALT+DEL key combination (hard or soft reset).

cytune

cytune queries and modifies the interruption threshold for the Cyclades driver.

ddate

ddate converts Gregorian dates to Discordian dates.

dmesg

dmesg is used to examine or control the kernel ring buffer (boot messages from the kernel).

elvtune

elvtune allows to tune the I/O elevator per block device queue basis.

fdformat

fdformat low−level formats a floppy disk.

fdisk

fdisk is a disk partition table manipulator.

fsck.minix

fsck.minix performs a consistency check for the Linux MINIX filesystem.

getopt

getops parses command options the same way as the getopt C command.

hexdump

hexdump displays specified files, or standard input, in a user specified format (ascii, decimal, hexadecimal,

octal).

hwclock

hwclock queries and sets the hardware clock (Also called the RTC or BIOS clock).

ipcrm

ipcrm removes a specified resource.

ipcs

ipcs provides information on IPC facilities.

kill

kill sends a specified signal to the specified process.

logger

logger makes entries in the system log.

look

look displays lines beginning with a given string.

losetup

losetup sets up and controls loop devices.

mcookie

mcookie generates magic cookies for xauth.

mkfs

mkfs builds a Linux filesystem on a device, usually a harddisk partition.

mkfs.bfs

mkfs.bfs creates a SCO bfs file system on a device, usually a harddisk partition.

mkfs.minix

mkfs.minix creates a Linux MINIX filesystem on a device, usually a harddisk partition.

mkswap

mkswap sets up a Linux swap area on a device or in a file.

more

more is a filter for paging through text one screen full at a time.

mount

mount mounts a filesystem from a device to a directory (mount point).

namei

namei follows a pathname until a terminal point is found.

umount

umount unmounts a mounted filesystem.

ramsize

ramsize queries and sets RAM disk size.

rdev

rdev queries and sets image root device, swap device, RAM disk size, or video mode.

readprofile

readprofile reads kernel profiling information.

rename

rename renames files.

renice

renice alters priority of running processes.

rev

rev reverses lines of a file.

rootflags

rootflags queries and sets extra information used when mounting root.

script

script makes typescript of terminal session.

setfdprm

setfdprm sets user−provides floppy disk parameters.

setsid

setsid runs programs in a new session.

setterm

setterm sets terminal attributes.

sfdisk

sfdisk is a disk partition table manipulator.

swapdev

swapdev queries and sets swap device.

swapoff

swapoff disables devices and files for paging and swapping.

swapon

swapon enables devices and files for paging and swapping.

tunelp

tunelp sets various parameters for the LP device.

ul

ul reads a file and translates occurrences of underscores to the sequence which indicates underlining for the terminal in use.

vidmode

vidmode queries and sets the video mode.

whereis

whereis locates a binary, source and manual page for a command.

write

write sends a message to another user.

Netkit−base

Contents

The Netkit−base package contains the inetd and ping programs.

Description

inetd

inetd is the mother of all daemons. It listens for connections, and transfers the call to the appropriate daemon.

ping

ping sends ICMP ECHO_REQUEST packets to a host and determines its response time.

Net−tools

Contents

The Net−tools package contains the arp, hostname, ifconfig, netstat, plipconfig, rarp, route, and slattach programs.

Description

arp

arp is used to manipulate the kernel's ARP cache, usually to add or delete an entry, or to dump the ARP cache.

hostname

hostname, with its symlinks domainname, dnsdomainname, nisdomainname, ypdomainname, and nodename, is used to set or show the system's hostname (or other, depending on the symlink used).

ifconfig

The ifconfig command is the general command used to configure network interfaces.

netstat

netstat is a multi−purpose tool used to print the network connections, routing tables, interface statistics, masquerade connections, and multicast memberships.

plipconfig

plipconfig is used to fine−tune the PLIP device parameters, hopefully making it faster.

rarp

Akin to the arp program, the rarp program manipulates the system's RARP table.

route

route is the general utility which is used to manipulate the IP routing table.

slattach

slattach attaches a network interface to a serial line, i.e.. puts a normal terminal line into one of several "network" modes.

Appendix B. Dependencies

Introduction

This appendix lists all the installation dependencies for all the packages that are installed in this book. The listings will include which programs from which packages are needed to successfully compile the package to be installed.

These are not running dependencies, meaning they don't tell you what programs are needed to use that packages programs. Just the ones needed to compile it.

The dependency list can be, from time to time, outdated in regards to the current used package version. Checking dependencies takes quite a bit of work, so they may lag behind a bit on the package update. But often with minor package updates, the installation dependencies hardly change, so they'll be current in most cases. If we upgrade to a major new release, we'll make sure the dependencies are checked too at the same time.

Bash–2.05

Dependencies

Bash–2.05 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package size from t

Binutils–2.11.2

Dependencies

Binutils–2.11.2 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from th

Bzip2–1.0.1

Dependencies

Bzip2–1.0.1 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cp from th

Diffutils–2.7

Dependencies

Diffutils–2.7 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ld from the binutils package as from the binutils package chmod from the fileutils package cp fro

Fileutils–4.1

Dependencies

Fileutils–4.1 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from
from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package ls from the fileutils package mkdir from the fileutils package mv fro

GCC–2.95.3

Dependencies

GCC–2.95.3 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from th
from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package chmod from the fileutils package cp from the fileutils package ln

Grep–2.4.2

Dependencies

Grep–2.4.2 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Gzip–1.2.4a

Dependencies

Gzip–1.2.4a needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from the binutils package chmod fr

Linux–2.4.8

Dependencies

Linux–2.4.8 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from th

Make–3.79.1

Dependencies

Make–3.79.1 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package chgrp fr

Mawk–1.3.3

Dependencies

Mawk–1.3.3 needs the following to be installed:

chmod from the fileutils package cp from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package rm from the fileutils package as

Patch–2.5.4

Dependencies

Patch–2.5.4 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package chmod f

Sed–3.02

Dependencies

Sed–3.02 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Sh−utils−2.0

Dependencies

Sh−utils−2.0 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Tar−1.13

Dependencies

Tar−1.13 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Texinfo–4.0

Dependencies

Texinfo–4.0 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Textutils–2.0

Dependencies

Textutils–2.0 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Chroot

Dependencies

Chroot needs the following to be installed:

bash from the bash package env from the sh−utils package

Glibc−2.2.4

Dependencies

Glibc−2.2.4 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package ranlib fron

Makedev−1.4

Dependencies

MAKEDEV−1.4 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package chmod from the fileutils package chown from the fileutils package cp from the fileutils package l

Man−pages−1.39

Dependencies

Man−pages−1.39 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package install from the fileutils package make from the make package patch from the patch package

Findutils–4.1

Dependencies

Findutils–4.1 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package chmod fro

Ncurses−5.2

Dependencies

Ncurses−5.2 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Vim−5.8

Dependencies

Vim−5.8 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ld from the binutils package as from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package diff fro
from the sh−utils package cat from the textutils package tr from the textutils package wc from the textutils package

Bison−1.28

Dependencies

Bison−1.28 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Less−358

Dependencies

Less−358 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package chmod f
from the sh−utils package expr from the sh−utils package uname from the sh−utils package cat from the textutils package t

Groff–1.17.2

Dependencies

Groff–1.17.2 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package bison from

Man−1.5i2

Dependencies

Man−1.5i2 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package bzip2 from the bzip2 package chmod fr
from the fileutils package mkdir from the fileutils package mv from the fileutils package rm from the fileutils package gcc

Perl–5.6.1

Dependencies

Perl–5.6.1 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from th

M4−1.4

Dependencies

M4−1.4 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package chmod fro

Autoconf–2.52

Dependencies

Autoconf–2.52 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package cmp from the diffutils package chmod from the fileutils package cp from the fileutils package ls

Automake–1.5

Dependencies

Automake–1.5 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package cmp from the diffutils package chmod from the fileutils package cp from the fileutils package ls

Flex−2.5.4a

Dependencies

Flex−2.5.4a needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package bison from
from the sh−utils package cat from the textutils package tr from the textutils package

File–3.36

Dependencies

File–3.36 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package chmod f

Libtool–1.4

Dependencies

Libtool–1.4 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Bin86–0.16.0

Dependencies

Bin86–0.16.0 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package strip from the binutils package chmod f
from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package mv from the fileutils package cc from the gcc package make from th

Ed−0.2

Dependencies

Ed−0.2 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package chmod fro

Gettext–0.10.39

Dependencies

Gettext–0.10.39 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from th

Kbd−1.06

Dependencies

Kbd−1.06 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package strip from the binutils package bison fr
from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package mv from the fileutils package rm from the fileutils package flex fro

E2fsprogs−1.22

Dependencies

E2fsprogs−1.22 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from

Lilo–21.7.5

Dependencies

Lilo–21.7.5 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as86 from the bin86 package ld86 from the bin86 package as from the binutils package ld from t

Modutils–2.4.7

Dependencies

Modutils–2.4.7 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package strip from
from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package mkdir from the fileutils package mv from the fileutils package rm fi

Netkit−base−0.17

Dependencies

Netkit−base−0.17 needs the following to be installed:

sh rom the bash package as rom the binutils package ld rom the binutils package strip rom the binutils package cp rom the
from the fileutils package rm rom the fileutils package make rom the make package cc rom the gcc package sed rom the se

Procinfo−18

Dependencies

Procinfo−18 needs the following to be installed:

as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package install
from the fileutils package mkdir from the fileutils package make from the make package sed from the sed package

Procps–2.0.7

Dependencies

Procps–2.0.7 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package strip from the binutils package install from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package mv from the fileutils package rm from the fileutils package gcc from

Psmisc–20.1

Dependencies

Psmisc–20.1 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package cmp from the diffutils package chmod f

Reiserfs−N/A

Dependencies

Reiserfs−N/A needs the following to be installed:

TO BE DETERMINED

Net−tools−1.60

Dependencies

Net−tools−1.60 needs the following to be installed:

bash from the bash package sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the
from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package rm from the fileutils package msgfmt from the gettext package cc fr

Shadow–20001016

Dependencies

Shadow–20001016 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package ar from the binutils package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package nm from th

Sysklogd–1.4.1

Dependencies

Sysklogd–1.4.1 needs the following to be installed:

as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package strip from the binutils package install from the fileutils package gcc rom the gcc package make from the make package

Sysvinit–2.82

Dependencies

Sysvinit–2.82 needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package chown from the fileutils package install from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package mknod from the fileutils package rm from the fileutils package cc fr

Util−linux−2.11h

Dependencies

Util−linux−2.11h needs the following to be installed:

sh from the bash package as from the binutils package ld from the binutils package chgrp from the fileutils package chmod
from the fileutils package ln from the fileutils package mkdir from the fileutils package mv from the fileutils package rm fı
from the sh−utils package whoami from the sh−utils package cat from the textutils package

Appendix C. Resources

Introduction

A list of books, HOWTOs and other documents that might be useful to download or buy follows. This list is just a small list to start with. We hope to be able to expand this list in time as we come across more useful documents or books.

Books

- Linux Network Administrator's Guide published by O'Reilly. ISBN: 1−56502−087−2
- Running Linux published by O'Reilly. ISBN: 1−56592−151−8

HOWTOs and Guides

All of the following HOWTOs can be downloaded from the Linux Documentation Project site at http://www.linuxdoc.org

- Linux Network Administrator's Guide
- From−PowerUp−To−Bash−Prompt−HOWTO

Other

- The various man and info pages that come with the packages

Appendix D. Official download locations

Official download locations

Below is the list with packages from chapter 3 with their original download locations. This might help to find a newer version of a package quicker.

Bash (2.05a): ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/bash/ Binutils (2.11.2): ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/binutils/ Bzip2 (1.0.1): ftp://sourceware.cy